ŠKODA

OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS



ŠKODA Fabia



6V0012720AC

Preface

You have opted for a ŠKODA – our sincere thanks for your confidence in us.

The description of the vehicle operation, important information about safety, vehicle care, maintenance and self-help, as well as technical vehicle data, are given in this Manual.

The operation of some functions and vehicle systems is undertaken via Infotainment.

Please do not read just this manual, but also the Infotainment manual carefully as well. The procedure in accordance with the two instructions is a prerequisite for the correct use of the vehicle.

We hope you enjoy driving your ŠKODA, and wish you a pleasant journey at all times.

Your ŠKODA AUTO a.s. (hereinafter referred to only as ŠKODA or manufacturer)

6V0012720AC

Table of Contents

Board literature 4

Notes 5

Structure and more information about the Operating Instructions 6

Abbreviations

Safety

Passive Safety 8
- General information 8
- Correct and safe seated position 8

Seat belts 11
- Wearing seat belts 11
- Inertia reel and belt pre-tensioners 13

Airbag system 14
- Description of the airbag system 14
- Airbag overview 15
- Deactivating airbags 18

Transporting children safely 20
- Child seat 20
- Fastening systems 22

Operation

Cockpit 26
- Overview 25

Instruments and warning lights 27
- Instrument cluster 27
- Warning lights 31

Information system 39
- Driver information system 39
- Driving data (Multifunction display) 40
- MAXI DOT display 42
- Service interval display 46
- SmartGate 47

Unlocking and opening 49
- Unlocking and locking 49
- Anti-theft alarm system 54
- Tailgate 55
- Window operations 56

Lights and visibility 59
- Lights 59
- Interior lights 64
- Visibility 65
- Windscreen wipers and washers 66
- Rear mirror 68

Seats and headrests 70
- Seats and headrests 70
- Seat features 71

Transporting and practical equipment 74
- Useful equipment 74
- Luggage compartment 83
- Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment 88
- Bicycle carrier in the luggage compartment 90
- Roof rack 93

Heating and air conditioning 94
- Heating, ventilation, cooling 94

Driving

Starting-off and driving 100
- Starting and stopping the engine using the key 100
- Starting and stopping the engine at the push of the button 102
- START-STOPsystem 104
- Brakes and parking 106
- Manual gear shifting and pedals 107
- Automatic transmission 108
- Running-in and economical driving 111
- Avoiding damage to your vehicle 113

Assist systems 114
- Braking and stabilisation systems 114
- Parking assistance (ParkPilot) 116
- Speed control system 118
- Speed limiter 120
- Front Assistant 122
- Fatigue detection 125
- Tyre pressure monitoring 125

Hitch and trailer 127
- Hitch 127
- Trailer 132

General Maintenance

Care and maintenance 136
- Services, modifications and technical alterations 136
- Washing vehicle 139
- Cleaning vehicle exterior 140
- Interior care 144

Inspecting and replenishing 147
- Fuel 147
- Engine compartment 149
- Engine oil 152
- Coolant 154
- Brake fluid 155
- Vehicle battery 156

Wheels 160
- Tyres and rims 160
- Winter use 164

Do-it-yourself

Emergency equipment, and self-help 166
Emergency equipment 166
Changing a wheel 168
Breakdown kit 172
Jump-starting 174
Towing the vehicle 175
Remote control 177
Emergency unlocking/locking 178
Replacing windscreen wiper blades 179

Fuses and light bulbs 181
Fuses 181
Replacing bulbs 184

Technical data

Technical data 192
Vehicle data 192

Index

Board literature

You can always find these **Operating Instructions**and the **Service Plan** in the on-board instructions for your vehicle.

Depending on the equipment, the on-board literature can also include the **Infotainment operating instructions**and in some countries also the brochure **On the road**.

Operating Instructions
These operating instructions apply to all **body versions** of the vehicle and all related **models** as well as for all **equipment levels**.

This owner's manual describes **all possible equipment versions** without identifying them as special equipment, model variants or market-dependent equipment. Consequently, this vehicle **does not contain all of the equipment components** described in this Owner's Manual.

The level of equipment of your vehicle refers to your purchase contract of the vehicle. If you have any questions regarding the scope of equipment, please contact a ŠKODA Partner.

The **Pictures** in this manual are for illustration purposes only. The illustrations can differ in minor details from your vehicle; they are only intended to provide general information.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. pursues a policy of constant further development of all vehicles. Each time, therefore, any changes to the vehicle occur, the scope of delivery may change in terms of its equipment and technology. The information listed in this Manual corresponds to the information available at the time of going to press.

It is therefore not possible for legal claims to be made based on the technical details, illustrations and descriptions contained in this Owner's Manual.

Service schedule
The service plan includes the documentation of the vehicle handover information, warranty and service events.

Infotainment operating instructions
The Infotainment manual contains a description of the Infotainment service and possibly also some functions and vehicle systems.

Move brochure
The Move brochure contains the customer service phone number, service number, and emergency numbers that exist in the various countries.

Notes

Terms used

The on-board literature contains the following terms relating to the service work for your vehicle.

"Specialist garage" - a workshop that carries out specialist service tasks for ŠKODA vehicles. A specialist garage can be a ŠKODA partner, a ŠKODA service partner or an independent workshop.

"ŠKODA service partner" - A Workshop that has been contractually authorised by the manufacturer ŠKODA AUTO a.s. or its sales partner to perform service tasks on ŠKODA vehicles and to sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

"ŠKODA partner" - A company that has been authorised by the manufacturer ŠKODA AUTO a.s. or its sales partner to sell new ŠKODA vehicles and, when applicable, to service them using ŠKODA Genuine Parts and sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

Explanation of symbols

An overview of the symbols used in the instruction manual and a brief explanation of their meaning.

- Reference to the introductory module of a chapter with important information and safety warnings
- ▶ Continuation of the module on the next page
- Situations in which the vehicle must be stopped as soon as possible
- ® Registered trademark
- Telephone operation in the MAXI DOT display
- Text display in the segment display

WARNING

Texts with this symbol warn of a **serious accident, injury or loss of life**.

CAUTION

Texts with this symbol draw attention to the risk of vehicle damage or possible inoperability of some systems.

For the sake of the environment

Texts with this symbol contain information on environmental protection as well as tips for economical operation.

Note

Texts with this symbol contain additional information.

Structure and more information about the Operating Instructions

Structure of the manual
The operating manual is hierarchically divided into the following areas.

- **Paragraph** (e.g. safety) - the title of the paragraph is always indicated on the lower left side
  - **Main chapters** (e.g. airbag system) - the title of the main chapter is always indicated on the lower right side
    - **Chapter** (e.g. airbag overview)
      - 🕮 **Introduction to the topic** - Module Overview within the chapter introductory information about the chapter content, if necessary, valid for the entire chapter notes
      - **Module** (e.g. front airbags)

Information Search
When searching for information in the operating instructions, we recommend using the **Index** at the end of the manual.

Direction indications
All direction indications such as "left", "right", "front", "rear" relate to the forward direction of travel of the vehicle.

Units of measurement
The volume, weight, speed and length data are given in metric units, unless otherwise indicated.

Display
In this owner's manual, the display on the MAXI DOT display is used as the display illustration, provided nothing to the contrary is stated.

Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Definition
rpm	Engine revolutions per minute
ABS	Anti-lock brake system
AGM	Vehicle battery type
TCS	Traction control
CO_2	Carbon dioxide
COC	Declaration of conformity
DSG	Automatic double clutch gearbox
EDL	Electronic differential lock
ECE	Economic Commission for Europe
EPC	EPC fault light
ESC	Electronic Stability Control
RD	Rim depth
EU	European Union
HBA	Hydraulic brake assist
HHC	Uphill start assist
KESSY	Keyless unlocking, starting and locking
kW	Kilowatt, measuring unit for output
MCB	Multi-collision brake
MG	Manual gearbox
MPI	Gasoline engine with a multi-point fuel injection
N1	Panel van intended exclusively or mainly for the transportation of goods
Nm	Newton meter, measuring unit for the engine torque
TDI CR	Diesel engine with turbocharger and common rail injection system
TSI	Petrol engine with turbocharging and direct injection
VIN	Vehicle identification number
W	Watt, unit of power
Wi-Fi	wireless data network
XDS	Functional extension of the electronic differential lock

Safety

Passive Safety

General information

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Before every journey 8
Driving safety 8

In this section of the instructions you will find important information, tips and notes on the subject of passive safety.

We have combined everything here which you should be familiar with, for example, regarding seat belts, airbags, safety of children and anything similar.

You will find further information on safety, which concerns you and those travelling with you, in the following chapters of this Owner's Manual.

The complete on-board literature should therefore always be in the vehicle. This particularly applies, if you rent out or sell the vehicle.

Before every journey

For your own safety and the safety of the people travelling with you, please pay attention to the following points before setting off.

- Ensure that the lighting and the turn signal system are functioning properly.
- Make sure that the function of the wiper and the condition of the wiper blades are free of any defects.
- Ensure that all of the windows offer good visibility to the outside.
- Adjust the rear-view mirror so that vision to the rear is guaranteed.
- Ensure that the mirrors are not covered.
- Check the tyre inflation pressure.
- Check the engine oil, brake fluid and coolant levels.
- Secure all items of luggage.
- Do not exceed the permissible axle loads and permissible gross weight of the vehicle – risk of accident.
- Close all doors and the engine compartment and luggage compartment lid.
- Ensure that no objects can obstruct the pedals.
- Protect children in suitable child seats with correctly fastened seat belts » page 20, *Transporting children safely*.
- Adopt the correct seated position » page 8, *Correct and safe seated position*. Tell your passengers to assume the correct seated position.

Driving safety

The **driver** is fully responsible for himself and passengers, especially children. If your driving safety is affected, you place yourself and oncoming traffic at risk.

The following guidelines must therefore be observed.

- Do not become distracted from concentrating on the traffic situation, (e.g. by your passengers or mobile phone calls).
- Never drive when your driving ability is impaired, (e.g. due to medication, alcohol or drugs).
- Keep to the traffic regulations and the permissible speed limit.
- Always adjust the driving speed to the road, traffic and weather conditions.
- Take regular breaks on long journeys (at least every two hours).

The following list contains instructions for the **Passenger** which, if not observed, may cause serious injuries or death.

- Do not lean against the dash panel.
- Do not put your feet on the dash panel.

The following list contains instructions for all **Passengers** which, if not observed, may cause serious injuries or death.

- Do not sit only on the front edge of the seat.
- Do not sit facing to the side.
- Do not lean out of the window.
- Do not put your limbs out of the window.
- Do not put your feet on the seat upholstery.

Correct and safe seated position

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Correct seat position of the driver 9
Adjusting the steering wheel position 9
Correct seated position of the front passenger 10
Correct seated position of the rear seat passengers 10

WARNING

- The front seats and all head restraints must be adjusted to match body size at all times and the seat belt must always be fastened properly to provide the most effective levels of protection to passengers.
- Each occupant must correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to the seat. Children must be fastened » page 20, *Transporting children safely* with a suitable restraint system.
- By sitting incorrectly, the occupant is risking life-threatening injuries.
- The seat backrests must not be tilted too far back when driving, as this will impair the function of the seat belts and of the airbag system – risk of injury!

Correct seat position of the driver

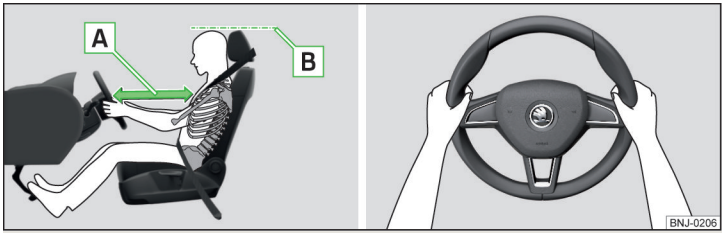


Fig. 1 **Correct seated position for the driver/correct steering wheel position**

Read and observe ! on page 9 first.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following settings.

✓ Adjust the driver's seat in the forward/back direction so that the pedals can be fully depressed with slightly bent legs.

✓ Adjust the seat backrest so that the highest point of the steering wheel can be reached with your arms at a slight angle.

✓ Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance A between the steering wheel and your chest is at least 25 cm » Fig. 1.

✓ Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head B » Fig. 1 (not for seats with integrated head restraint).

✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 11, *Wearing seat belts*.

WARNING

- Always assume the correct seated position before setting off and do not change this position while driving. Also advise your passengers to adopt the correct seated position and not to change this position while the car is moving.
- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the steering wheel. Not keeping to this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – risk of death!
- When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the "9 o'clock" and "3 o'clock" position » Fig. 1. Never hold the steering wheel in the "12 o'clock" position or in any other way (e.g. in the middle, inner edge of the steering wheel or similar). When the driver airbag is triggered you could seriously injure you arms, hands or head.
- Ensure that there are no objects in the driver's footwell, as these may get caught in the pedal apparatus when driving or braking. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, brake or acceleration pedals.

Adjusting the steering wheel position



Fig. 2 **Adjusting the steering wheel position**

Read and observe ! on page 9 first.

The height and forward/back position of the steering wheel can be adjusted.

› Swing the safety lever under the steering wheel in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 2.

› Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position. The steering wheel can be adjusted in direction of arrow 2.
› Pull the holder until it stops in arrow direction 3.

WARNING

- Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving, but only when the vehicle is stationary!
- The safety lever must be locked so that the steering wheel cannot accidentally change position – risk of accident!

Correct seated position of the front passenger

Read and observe ! on page 9 first.

For passenger safety and to reduce the risk of injury in an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

✓ Position the front passenger seat back as far as possible. The front passenger must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel so that the airbag offers the greatest possible safety if it is deployed.
✓ Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head B » Fig. 1 *on page 9* (not for seats with integrated head restraint).
✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 11, *Wearing seat belts*.

In exceptional cases the front passenger airbag can be deactivated » page 18, *Deactivating airbags*.

WARNING

- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel. Not keeping to this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – risk of death!
- Always keep your feet in the footwell when the car is being driven – never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window or on the surface of the seats! You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you may suffer fatal injuries when adopting an incorrect seated position!

Correct seated position of the rear seat passengers

Read and observe ! on page 9 first.

To reduce the risk of injury in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident, the occupants on the rear seats must observe the following.

✓ Adjust the head restraint such that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of the head B » Fig. 1 *on page 9*.
✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 11, *Wearing seat belts*.
✓ Use a suitable child restraint system if transporting children in the vehicle » page 20, *Transporting children safely*.

Seat belts

Wearing seat belts

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The physical principle of a frontal collision 12
Correct routing of seat belt 12
Fastening and unfastening seat belts 13

Seat belts that are fastened correctly offer good protection in the event of an accident. They reduce the risk of an injury and increase the chance of survival in the event of a major accident.

Properly fastened seat belts hold occupants to correctly set seats in the right seat position.

Particular safety aspects must be observed when transporting children in the vehicle » page 20.

The national legal requirements must be observed when using seat belts.

WARNING

- Fasten your seat belt before each journey - even when driving in town! This also applies to other passengers - there is a danger of injury!
- Maximum seat belt protection is only achieved if you are correctly seated » page 8, *Correct and safe seated position*.
- The seat backrests of the front seats must not be tilted too far to the rear, otherwise the seatbelts can lose their effectiveness.

WARNING

Information on the correct routing of the belt

- Always ensure that the webbing of the seat belts is properly routed. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even, in minor accidents.
- Adjust the height of the belt in such a way that the shoulder part of the belt is roughly positioned across the middle of your shoulder - on no account across your neck.

WARNING (Continued)

- A seat belt which is hanging too loose can result in injuries, as your body is moved forward by the kinetic energy produced in an accident and is then abruptly held firm by the belt.
- The belt must not run across solid or fragile objects (e.g. spectacles, ball-point pens, keys, etc.). Such objects can cause injury.

WARNING

Information on dealing with the safety belts

- The belt webbing must not be jammed in-between at any point or twisted or chafe against any sharp edges.
- Make sure you do not catch the seat belt in the door when closing it.

WARNING

Information on the proper use of the safety belts

- No two persons (also not children) should ever use a single seat belt together.
- The lock tongue should only be inserted into the lock which is the correct one for your seat. Wrong use of the safety belt will reduce its capacity to protect and the risk of injury increases.
- The slot of the belt tongue must not be blocked otherwise the belt tongue will not lock in place properly.
- Many layers of clothing and loose clothing (e. g. a winter coat over a jacket) do not allow you to be correctly seated and impairs proper operation of the seat belts.
- Do not use clamps or other objects to adjust seat belts (e.g. for shortening the belts for smaller persons).
- The seat belts for the rear seats can only fulfil their function reliably when the seat backrests are correctly locked into position » page 72.

WARNING

Information on the care and maintenance of the safety belts

- The belt webbing must always be kept clean. Soiled belts may impair proper operation of the inertia reel » page 146.
- The seat belts must not be removed or changed in any way. Do not attempt to repair the seat belts yourself.

WARNING (Continued)

- Check the condition of all the seat belts on a regular basis. If any damage to the seat belts, seat belt connections, inertia reel or the lock is detected, the seat belt concerned must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- Damaged seat belts which have been subjected to stress in an accident and were therefore stretched, must be replaced - this is best done by a specialist garage. The anchorage points of the belts must also be inspected. The anchorage points for the belts should also be checked.

The physical principle of a frontal collision

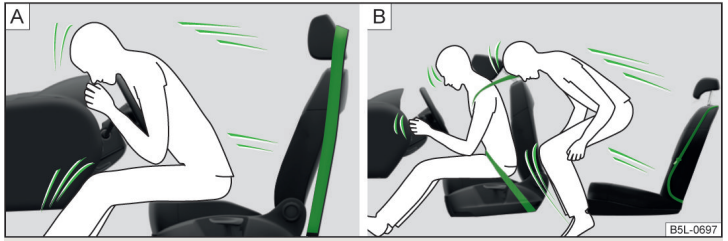


Fig. 3 **Driver without a fastened seat belt/rear seat passenger without a fastened seat belt**

Read and observe ! on page 11 first.

As soon as the vehicle is moving, so-called kinetic energy (the energy of motion) is produced, both in terms of the car as well as in terms of the occupants.

The magnitude of this kinetic energy depends essentially on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and on the weight of the vehicle, including the occupants.

Doubling the speed of the vehicle from 25 km/h up to 50 km/hour increases the kinetic energy four times.

For example, a person's weight of 80 kg "increases" at 50 km/h to 4.8 tons (4,800 kg).

In the event of a frontal collision, occupants of the car not wearing a seat belt are thrown forward and strike parts of the interior of the car, such as the steering wheel, dash panel, windscreen in ways which cannot be controlled » Fig. 3 - A. In certain circumstances, you could even be thrown out of the vehicle, which could cause life-threatening or even fatal injuries.

A rear seat passenger who has not fastened their seat belt is a danger not only to himself or herself but also to those seated in the front » Fig. 3 - B.

Correct routing of seat belt

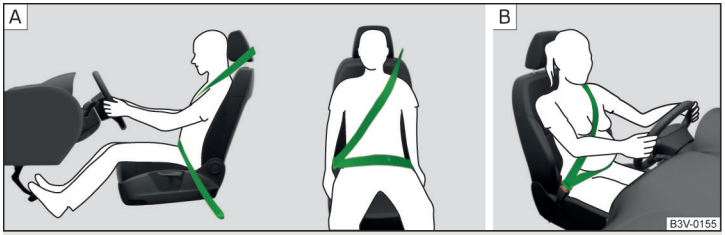


Fig. 4 **Routing of belt webbing over the shoulders and the lap belt/Routing of belt webbing for an expectant mother**

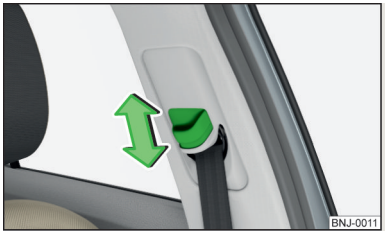


Fig. 5
Front seat: Seat belt height adjuster

Read and observe ! on page 11 first.

It is important that the belt is properly routed to ensure seat belts offer the maximum protection.

The shoulder part of the seat belt must never run across the neck but must roughly run over the middle of the shoulder and fit snugly against the chest. The lap part of the belt must run across the pelvis, must not be positioned across the stomach and must always fit snugly » Fig. 4 - A.

Seat belt height adjusters for front seats
The seat belt height adjuster makes it possible to adjust the routing of the front seat belts in the area of the shoulder to the body size.

› Press the height adjuster and move to the desired position » Fig. 5.
› Then pull firmly on the belt to ensure that the seat belt height adjuster has correctly locked in place.

Seat belts with pregnant women
Expectant women must also always wear a seat belt. This is the only way of ensuring optimal protection for the unborn child.

With pregnant women, the lap part of the belt must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis to avoid exerting any pressure on the lower abdomen » Fig. 4 - B.

Fastening and unfastening seat belts

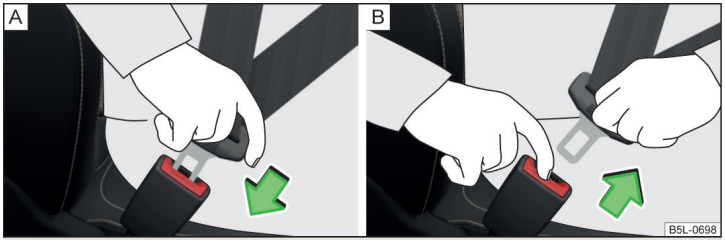


Fig. 6 **Fastening/unfastening the seat belt**

Read and observe ! on page 11 first.

Before using the seat belts the following conditions must be met.

✓ Correctly set head restraint (not for seats with integrated head restraint).
✓ Correctly adjusted seat (applies for the front seats).
✓ Correctly adjusted steering wheel (applies to the Driver's seat).

Fastening
› Use the lock tongue to slowly pull the webbing over your chest and pelvis.
› Insert the lock tongue into the belt buckle belonging to the seat » Fig. 6 - A until you hear it click into place.
› Pull on the belt to check that it has engaged correctly in the lock.

Release
Release the seat belt only when the vehicle is stationary.

› Press the red button in the belt buckle » Fig. 6 - B and the lock tongue will pop out.
› Manually guide the belt back so that it is easier to fully roll up the webbing and to ensure the seat belt does not twist.

! CAUTION
When releasing the seatbelt, ensure that the tongue of the lock does not damage the door trim or other parts of the interior.

Inertia reel and belt pre-tensioners

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Inertia reel 13
Belt tensioners 14

Inertia reel

Each seat belt is equipped with an inertia reel. The seat belt can move freely when it is pulled slowly.

The seat belt is locked by the inertia reel when it is pulled suddenly. The belts also lock under full braking, under acceleration, when driving downhill and when cornering.

! WARNING
If the seat belt does not lock when it is pulled sharply, have it inspected immediately by a specialist garage.

Belt tensioners

Safety for the driver and front passenger **wearing their seat belts** is enhanced by the belt tensioners fitted to the inertia reels of the front three-point seat belts.

If there is a collision the seat belts are tightened by the belt tensioner so that unwanted body motion is prevented.

The three-point seat belts are automatically tensioned in the event of a frontal collision of a certain severity.

The front seat belts are automatically tensioned in the event of a side collision of a certain severity.

Belt tensioners are **not activated** in the event of **minor** frontal, side or rear-end collisions, in the case of a roll-over and also not in accidents in which no major forces are produced.

WARNING

- Any work on the belt tensioner system including removal and installation of system components because of other repair work, must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- The protective function of the system is only adequate for a single accident. If the belt tensioners have been deployed, it is then necessary to replace the entire system.

Note

- The belt tensioners can also be deployed if the seat belts are not fastened.
- Smoke is generated when the belt tensioners are deployed. This is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.
- When disposing of the vehicle or parts of the belt tensioner system, comply with national legal requirements.

Airbag system

Description of the airbag system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

System description 15
Airbag deployment 15

The airbag system supplements the fastened seat belts and provides additional occupant protection in severe frontal and side collisions.

The functional status of the airbag system is indicated by the indicator light in the instrument cluster » page 34.

WARNING

- **An airbag can only offer you optimal protection in combination with a fastened seat belt.**
- The airbag is not a substitute for the seat belt, but instead forms part of the complete passive vehicle safety concept.
- To ensure passengers are protected with the greatest possible effect when the airbag is deployed, the front seats must be correctly adjusted to match body size » page 8, *Correct and safe seated position*.
- If you do not fasten the seat belts when driving, lean too far forward or adopt an incorrect seated position, you are exposing yourself to increased risk of injury in the event of an accident.

WARNING

Information on the use of the airbag system

- If there is a fault, have the airbag system checked immediately by a specialist garage. Otherwise, there is a risk of the airbag not being activated in the event of an accident.
- No modifications of any kind must be made to parts of the airbag system.
- Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Never make any changes to the front bumper or the bodywork.

WARNING (Continued)

- Do not manipulate individual parts of the airbag system, as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
- The protective function of the airbag system is sufficient for only one accident. The airbag system must then be replaced if the airbag has been deployed.

System description

Read and observe ! on page 14 first.

The inflation of the airbag is carried out in a fraction of a second.

When the airbags are deployed, they fill with gas and inflate.

A grey white or red, non-harmful gas is released when the airbag is inflated. This is perfectly normal and is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the airbag system consists of the following parts.

- Front airbag for the driver and the front passenger » page 16.
- Side airbags » page 17.
- Head airbags » page 18.
- Airbag indicator light in the instrument cluster » page 34.
- Key switch for the front passenger airbag » page 19.
- Warning light for the front passenger airbag in the middle of the dash panel » page 19.

Note

When disposing of the vehicle or parts of the airbag system, comply with national legal requirements.

Airbag deployment

Read and observe ! on page 14 first.

The airbag system is only functional when the ignition is switched on.

Triggering conditions

It is not possible to generally determine which deployment conditions apply to the airbag system in every situation. An important role is played by factors such as the type of object that the vehicle hits (hard/soft), the impact angle, vehicle speed, etc.

A decisive factor for the deployment of the airbags is the deceleration which occurs. If the vehicle deceleration which occurs and is measured during the collision remains below the prescribed reference values specified in the control unit, the airbags are not deployed although the vehicle may well suffer severe damage to the bodywork as a consequence of the accident.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe frontal collision.

- Driver's front airbag.
- Front passenger airbag.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe side collision.

- Front side airbag on the side of the accident.
- Head airbags on the side of the accident.

When an airbag is deployed, the following events occur.

- The interior light comes on (if the automatic operation of the interior light is switched on - switch).
- The ignition is switched on.
- All the doors are unlocked.
- The fuel supply to the engine is interrupted.

When there is no air bag deployment?

With **minor** frontal and side collisions, rear collision, overturning of the vehicle or vehicle roll-over there is no airbag deployment.

Airbag overview

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front airbags 16
Side airbags 17
Head airbags 18

Front airbags

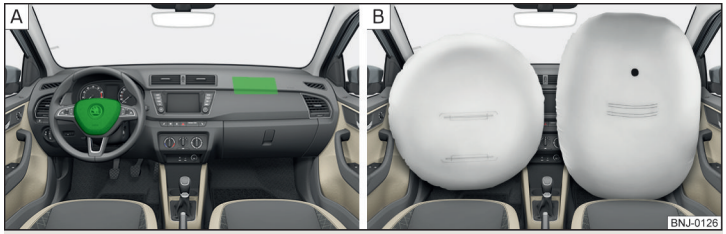


Fig. 7 **Locations of the airbags / gas filled airbags**

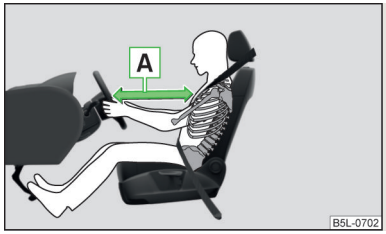


Fig. 8
Safe distance to steering wheel

In the event of a severe frontal collision, the front airbags offer additional protection for the head and chest area of the driver and front passenger.

The driver's front airbag is located in the steering wheel, the front passenger airbag is located in the instrument panel above the glove compartment » Fig. 7 - A .

The airbags inflate in front of the driver and front passenger when they are deployed » Fig. 7 - B. The forward movement of the driver and of the front passenger is cushioned when they make contact with the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to head and chest is thus reduced.

WARNING

Information on correct seating position

- For the driver and front passenger, it is important to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel or dashboard A » Fig. 8. Not keeping to this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – risk of death! The front seats and the head restraints must always also be correctly adjusted to match the body size of the occupant.
- The airbag develops enormous forces when triggered, which can lead to injuries if the sitting position or seated position is not correct.
- There must not be any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the front seated occupants and the deployment area of the airbag.

WARNING

Front airbag and transporting children

- Never transport children on the front seat of a vehicle without using a proper restraint system. If airbags are deployed in the event of an accident, the child might suffer severe or even fatal injuries!
- It is essential to switch off the front passenger airbag if you are using a child seat on the front passenger seat in which the child is carried with its back facing the direction of travel » page 18, *Deactivating airbags*. If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed. When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, pay attention to any relevant national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.

WARNING

General information

- The steering wheel and the surface of the airbag module in the dash panel on the passenger side must not have stickers attached, be covered or modified in any other way. These parts should only be cleaned with a cloth that is dry or has been moistened with water. No objects (such as cup holders, mobile phone mounts, etc.) are to be attached to the covers of the airbag modules or be located within their immediate vicinity.
- Never place objects on the surface of the front passenger airbag module in the dash panel.

Note

- In vehicles with head airbags, the lettering **AIRBAG** can be seen on the steering wheel.
- In vehicles with front passenger airbags, the lettering **AIRBAG** is located on the dash panel on the passenger side.

Side airbags

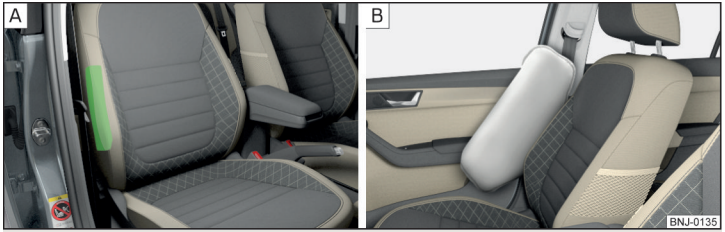


Fig. 9 **Location of the side airbag in the driver's seat / gas-filled airbag**

In the event of severe side collisions, the side airbags provide additional protection for the upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) of passengers in the vehicle.

The side airbags are housed in the upholstery of the seat backrests of the front seats » Fig. 9 - A.

The load of the occupants is cushioned when plunging into the fully inflated airbag » Fig. 9 - B the risk of injury to the entire upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) is reduced on the side facing the door.

WARNING

Information on correct seating position

- Your head should never be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag. You might suffer severe injuries in the event of an accident. This applies in particular to children who are transported without using a suitable child safety seat » page 22, *Child safety and side airbag*.

WARNING (Continued)

- There must not be any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the occupants and the deployment area of the airbag. No accessories, such as cup holders, should be attached to the doors.
- If children adopt an incorrect seated position when travelling, they may be exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. This can result in serious injuries » page 20, *Child seat*.

WARNING

- Do not place any objects within the deployment area of the side airbags – there is a risk of injury!
- The airbag control unit operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). Further information » page 138, *Airbags*.
- Ensure that there are no excessive forces, such as violent knocks, kicks etc., which impact on the backrests of the seats, otherwise the system may be damaged. The side airbags would not be deployed in such a case!
- Any seat or protective covers which you fit to the driver or front passenger seats must only be of the type expressly authorized by ŠKODA. In view of the fact that the airbag inflates out of the backrest of the seat, use of non-approved seat or protective covers would considerably impair the protective function of the side airbag.
- Any damage to the original seat covers in the area of the side airbag module must be repaired without delay by your specialist garage.
- The airbag modules in the front seats must not display any damage, cracks or deep scratches. It is not permissible to use force in order to open the modules.

Note

In vehicles with side airbags, a label with the lettering **AIRBAG** is located on the front seat backrests.

Head airbags

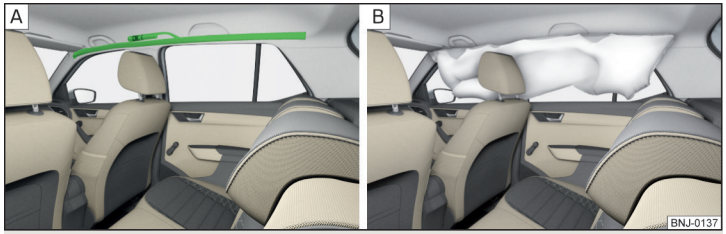


Fig. 10 **Location of the head airbag / gas-filled head airbag**

In the event of a severe side collision, the head airbags offer additional protection for the head and neck area of passengers.

The head airbags are positioned above the doors on both sides in the interior of the car » Fig. 10 - A.

The airbag covers the windows of the front and rear doors, as well as the door pillar when it is deployed » Fig. 10 - B.

Head impact with interior parts is reduced by the inflated head airbag. The reduction in any impact to the head and the resultant minimizing of any movements of the head additionally reduce the risk of injuries to the neck area.

WARNING

- There must not be any objects in the deployment area of the head airbags which might prevent the airbags from inflating properly.
- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks fitted in the vehicle. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing. Additionally, clothes hangers must not be used to hang up items of clothing.
- The installation of impermissible accessories in the vicinity of the head airbags can considerably impair the protection offered by the head airbag in the event of it being deployed. When the deployed head airbag is inflated, parts of the accessories fitted could, conditions permitting, be thrown into the interior of the car and injure the occupants » page 136.

WARNING (Continued)

- When objects are attached to the sun visor, the visor can not be pivoted to the side windows. This might result in injuries to the occupants if the head airbag is deployed.
- There must not be any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the occupants and the deployment area of the airbag. In addition, none of the occupants should lean their head out of the window when driving, or extend their arms and hands out of the window.

Note

In vehicles with head airbags, the lettering AIRBAG can be seen on the B column cladding.

Deactivating airbags

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Deactivating airbags 18
Switching off the front passenger airbag 19

Deactivating airbags

The national regulations for switching off airbags must be observed.

If you sell your vehicle, pass on the complete vehicle documentation to the new owner. Take care to ensure that the information relating to the possibility of deactivating the front passenger airbag must be included!

If an airbag in the vehicle is to be turned off, then the buyer is to draw attention to this fact!

Deactivating an airbag should, for example, be considered only in the following cases.

› When using a child seat on the front passenger seat, in which the child has its back to the vehicle's direction of travel (in some countries this must be in the direction of travel due to different legal regulations applying) » page 20, *Transporting children safely*.

› If it is not possible to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm between the middle of the steering wheel and chest, despite the driver's seat being correctly adjusted.

› If special attachments are required in the area of the steering wheel because of a physical disability.
› If other seats have been installed (e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags).

The front passenger airbag can be switched off with the key-operated switch » Fig. 11 *on page 19* - A.

We recommend that you ask a ŠKODA Service Partner to switch off any other airbags.

Deactivation indicator
Display of the airbag deactivation » page 34, *Airbag system*.

Note
A ŠKODA Service Partner will be able to inform you which airbags in your vehicle can/must be deactivated.

Switching off the front passenger airbag

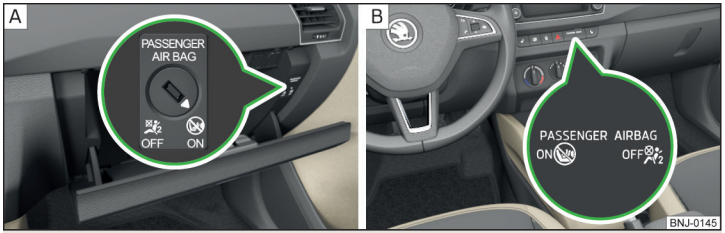


Fig. 11 **Key-operated switch for the front passenger airbag / warning light for front seat passenger airbag deactivation**

Only the front passenger airbag is deactivated with the key switch.

Key switch positions » Fig. 11 - A
OFF Passenger front airbag deactivated
ON Passenger front airbag activated

Switch off
› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› Fold the key bit out **completely** for the radio key » !.
› Carefully insert the key into the key slot in the key switch as far as the stop.
› Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch » Fig. 11 A carefully into the position **OFF**.
› Pull the key out of the slot in the key switch » !.
› Close the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› Check that the warning light OFF in the text **PASSENGER AIRBAG** » Fig. 11 - B lights up after the ignition is switched on.

When the airbag is switched off, the indicator light OFF illuminates continuously with the ignition on. This disappears after switching off the ignition.

Switching on
› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› Fold the key bit out **completely** for the radio key » !.
› Carefully insert the key into the key slot in the key switch as far as the stop.
› Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch » Fig. 11 A carefully into the position **ON**.
› Pull the key out of the slot in the key switch » !.
› Close the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› Check that the warning light ON in the text **PASSENGER AIRBAG** » Fig. 11 - B lights up after the ignition is switched on.

When the airbag is switched on again, the indicator light ON will go out 65 seconds after switching on the ignition.

WARNING
- The driver is responsible for whether the airbag is switched on or switched off.
- Only switch off the airbag when the ignition is switched off! Otherwise a fault can occur in the system for deactivating the airbag.
- If the ON OFF warning lights flash, the front passenger airbag will not be deployed in the event of an accident! Have the airbag system checked by a specialist garage immediately.
- Do not leave the key inserted in the key-operated switch while driving - vibrations can cause the key to turn in the slot and switch on the airbag! The airbag can be triggered unexpectedly in an accident - it may result in injury or death!

CAUTION
An insufficiently folded out key bit can damage the key switch!

Transporting children safely

Child seat

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat 21
Use of the child seat on the front passenger seat 21
Child safety and side airbag 22
Classification of child seats 22
Use of child seats fastened with a seat belt 22

To avoid serious injury or death children are always to be in an appropriate child safety seat with regards to height, weight, and age.

For safety reasons, we recommend that you always transport child seats on the rear seats.

The national legal requirements for transporting children and the use of child seat must be observed.

Child seats complying with the ECE-R 44 Economic Commission for Europe standard must be used.

Child seats that comply with the ECE-R 44 standard have a test seal that cannot be removed: a large E within a circle with the test number below.

With child safety seats in groups 2 and 3, make sure that the loop-around fittings attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the loop-around fittings on the B pillar on the passenger side.

WARNING

- You should never carry children - including babies! - on your lap.
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. Certain outside climatic conditions can cause life-threatening temperatures in the vehicle.
- The child must be secured in the vehicle throughout the journey! Otherwise, in the event of an accident, the child would be thrown through the vehicle and as a result may suffer fatal injuries and also injure other occupants.

WARNING (Continued)

- Children are exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident if they lean forward or adopt an incorrect seated position when the vehicle is moving. This particularly applies to children who are transported on the front passenger seat, as they can suffer severe, or even fatal, injuries if the airbag system is deployed!
- Pay particular attention to the information provided by the manufacturer of the child safety seat regarding the correct routing of the belt. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries, even in minor accidents.
- Safety belts must be checked to ensure that they are positioned properly. Care should also be taken to ensure that the belt is not damaged by sharp-edged fittings.
- It is essential to switch off the front passenger airbag if using a child seat on the front passenger seat in which the child is carried with its back facing the direction of travel. Further information » page 21, *Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat*.
- When installing the child seat on the back seat, the corresponding front seat must be adjusted so that there is no contact between the front seat and the child seat or the child being transported in a child seat.

CAUTION

- When installing a child seat in which the child faces forward, adjust the head restraints so that they are as high as possible.
- If the head restraints still prevent the child seat from being installed, even in the highest position, you will need to remove them » page 70. After removing the child seat, refit the head restraints.

Note

We recommend that you use child seats from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These child seats were developed and also tested for use in ŠKODA vehicles. They meet the ECE-R 44 standard.

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat

Does not apply to Taiwan



Fig. 12
Sticker on the B column on the front passenger side



Fig. 13 **Front passenger sun visor / label**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 20 first.

Never use a rearward-facing child restraint system on a seat which is protected by an active airbag. This could cause serious injury to the child, even death.

The following advice must be heeded when using a child seat in which the child is carried on the front passenger seat.

› It is essential to switch off the front passenger airbag if using a child seat in which the child is carried with its back facing the direction of travel » !.
› Set the front passenger seat back as vertically as possible so that there is firm contact between the passenger seat back and the child seat back.
› Where possible, move the front passenger seat back so that there is no contact between the front seat and the child seat behind.
› Set the height-adjustable front passenger seat as high up as possible.
› Set the front passenger seat belt as high up as possible.
› When using a child seat where there is a height adjuster in the upper area, the height of the passenger seat belt is to be set so that the belt is not "kinked" in the height adjuster. In the event of an accident, there is the risk of injury to the neck of the child carried due to the seat belt!

! WARNING

- **Never** use a child safety seat on the front passenger seat in which the child is seated with its back facing the direction of travel, if the airbag is switched on. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal, injuries in the event of it being deployed.
- This fact is also indicated by the label that can be found in one of the following locations.
  - On the B-column on the front passenger side » Fig. 12. The sticker is visible when opening the front passenger door.
  - On the front passenger's sun visor. In some countries, the sticker is located on the front seat passenger's sun visor » Fig. 13.
- The front passenger airbag should be switched on again once the child seat, in which the child is transported with their back to the direction of travel, is no longer in use on the passenger seat.

Use of the child seat on the front passenger seat

Applies to Taiwan



Fig. 14 **Front passenger sun visor / label**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 20 first.

No babies, infants or children are to be carried on the passenger seat.

A label to this effect can also be found on the passenger's sun visor » Fig. 14.

Child safety and side airbag

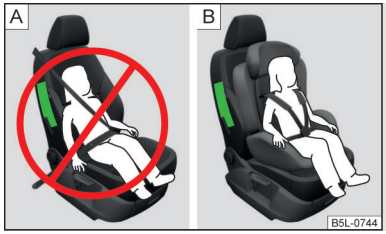


Fig. 15
Incorrect seated position of a child who is not properly secured – risk from the side airbag/Child properly protected by safety seat

Read and observe ! and ! on page 20 first.

The child must not be positioned in the area into which the side airbag will deploy » Fig. 15 - A.

There must be sufficient room between the child and the area into which the side airbag will deploy to allow the airbag to provide as much protection as possible » Fig. 15 - B.

Classification of child seats

Read and observe ! and ! on page 20 first.

Classification of child seats according to the ECE-R 44 standard.

Group	Weight of the child	Approximate age
0	up to 10 kg	up to 9 months
0+	up to 13 kg	up to 18 months
1	9 - 18 kg	up to 4 years
2	15-25 kg	up to 7 years
3	22-36 kg	over 7 years

Use of child seats fastened with a seat belt

Read and observe ! and ! on page 20 first.

Overview of the use of child seats fastened with a seat belt on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Front passenger seat	Rear seats external	Rear seat Middle
0 up to 10 kg	U	U	U
0+ up to 13 kg	U	U	U
1 9-18 kg	U	U	U
2 15-25 kg	U	U	U[a)]
3 22-36 kg	U	U	U[a)]

a) If the middle rear seat is not provided with a headrest, then a child seat of Group 2 or 3 is only to be used if this has its own built-in headrest. If the child seat of Group 2 or 3 does not have its own built-in headrest, the child seat must be attached to the outer rear seat.

U "Universal" child seat category - a child seat designed for fastening on the seat with the seat belt.

Fastening systems

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Attachment points of the ISOFIX-system 22
Use of child seats with the ISOFIX-system 23
Attachment points of the TOP TETHER-system 24

Attachment points of the ISOFIX-system



Fig. 16
Labels of the system ISOFIX

ISOFIX is a system for a fast and secure child-seat mounting.

There are two locking eyes between the rear exterior seats for fixing the child in place using the ISOFIX-system » Fig. 16.

! WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the ISOFIX-system.
- Never attach other child seats, belts or objects to the attachment points eyes intended for the installation of a child seat with the ISOFIX-system – risk of death!

i Note

- A child seat fitted with the ISOFIX system can only be mounted in a vehicle fitted with a ISOFIX system if the child seat has been approved for this type of vehicle. Further information is available from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Child seats with the ISOFIX-system can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Use of child seats with the ISOFIX-system

Overview of the usefulness of child seats fastened with the ISOFIX-system on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Size class of the child seat[a)]	Front passenger seat	Outer rear seats	Rear seat middle
0 up to 10 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
0+ up to 13 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
	D			
	C			
1 9-18 kg	D	X	IL-SU IUF	X
	C			
	B			
	B1			
	A			
2 15-25 kg		X	IL-SU	X
3 22-36 kg		X	IL-SU	X

a) The size category is shown on the label attached to the child seat.

IL-SU The seat is suited for installation of a ISOFIX-child seat with the "Semi-Universal" approval. The "Semi-Universal" category means that the child seat is approved for use with the ISOFIX-system. Note the information in the list of vehicles which comes with the child seat.

IUF The seat is suitable for the installation of a ISOFIX child seat with the "Universal" approval and attachment with the TOP TETHER system belt.

X The seat is not fitted with ISOFIX-system attachment points.

Attachment points of the TOP TETHER-system

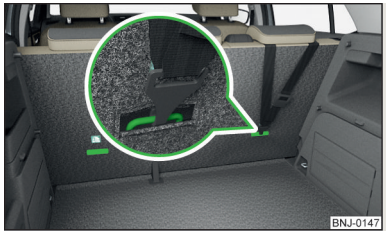


Fig. 17
Attachment points of the TOP TETHER-system

TOP TETHER is a fastening system, which restricts the movement of the upper part of the child seat.

The anchor eyelets for attaching the belt for a child seat with the TOP TETHER-system are located on the rear side of the outer rear seat backrests » Fig. 17.

Some country-specific models can also be equipped with a hitch point on the back of the middle rear seat backrest.

WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the TOP TETHER-system.
- Only use child seats with the TOP TETHER-system on the seats equipped with the locking eyes.
- Only ever attach one belt from the child seat to a locking eye.

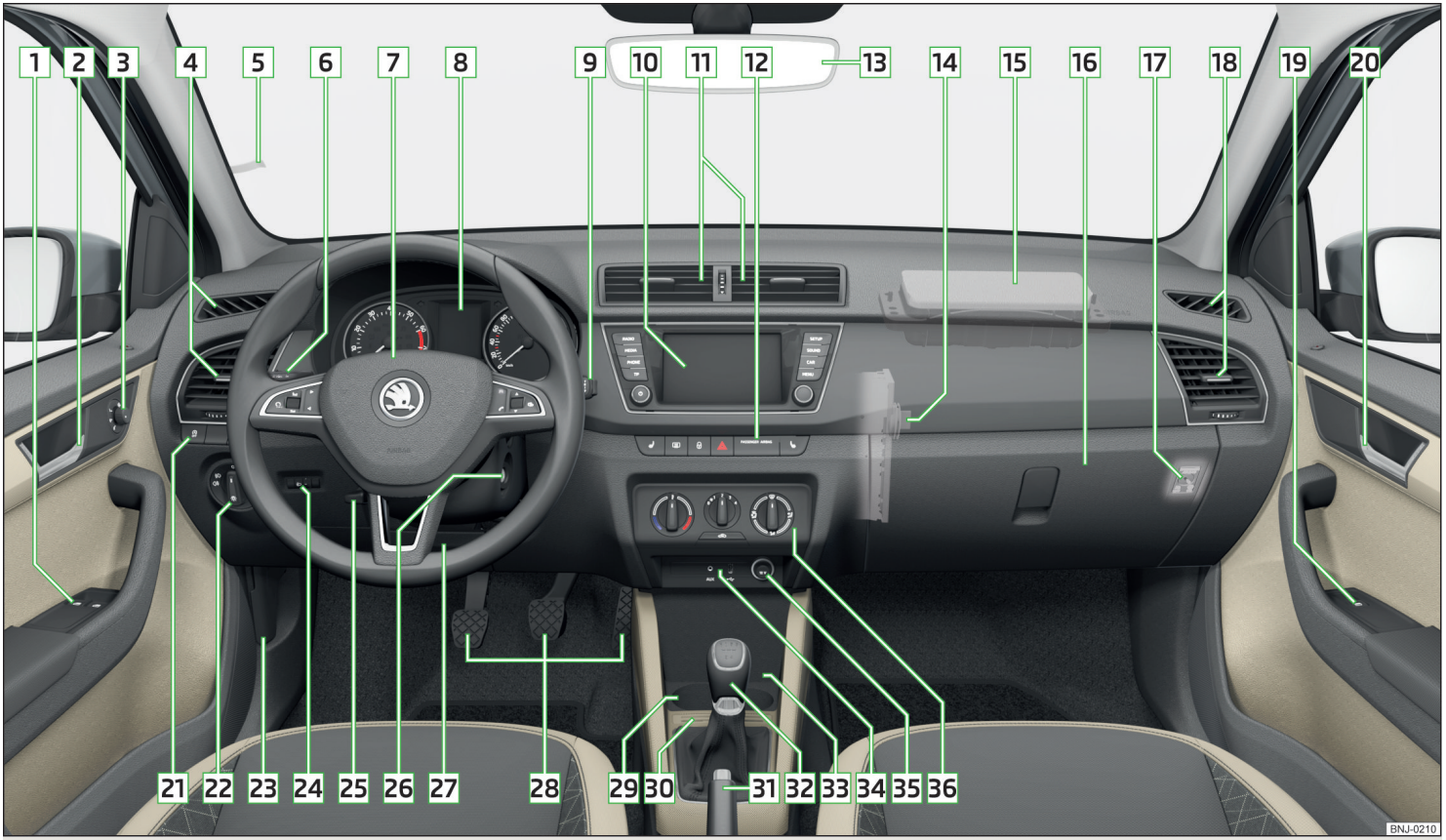
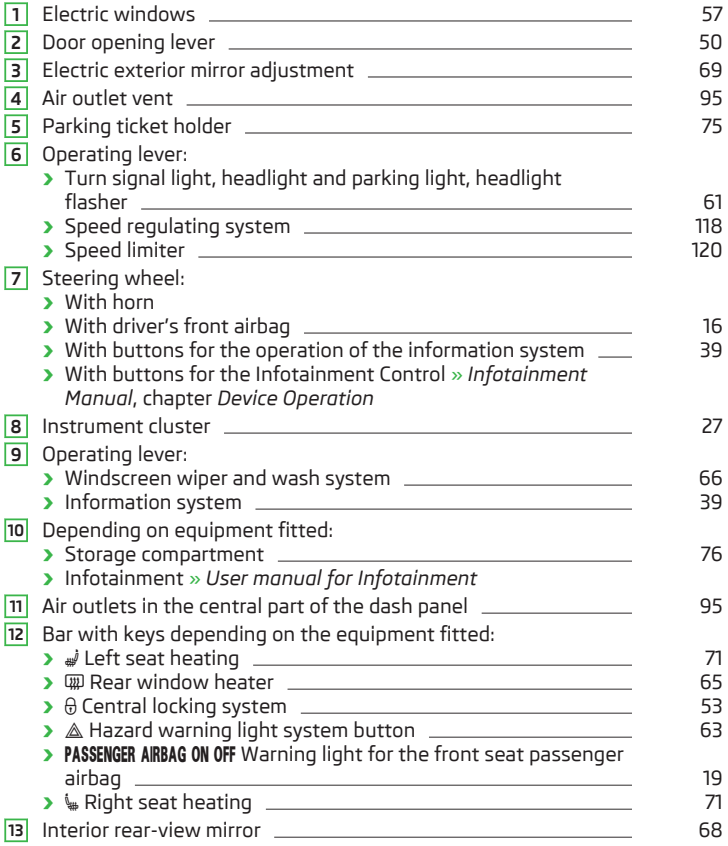


Fig. 18 **Cockpit**

Operation

Cockpit

Overview



1 Electric windows — 57
2 Door opening lever — 50
3 Electric exterior mirror adjustment — 69
4 Air outlet vent — 95
5 Parking ticket holder — 75
6 Operating lever:
- Turn signal light, headlight and parking light, headlight flasher — 61
- Speed regulating system — 118
- Speed limiter — 120

7 Steering wheel:
- With horn
- With driver's front airbag — 16
- With buttons for the operation of the information system — 39
- With buttons for the Infotainment Control » *Infotainment Manual*, chapter *Device Operation*

8 Instrument cluster — 27
9 Operating lever:
- Windscreen wiper and wash system — 66
- Information system — 39

10 Depending on equipment fitted:
- Storage compartment — 76
- Infotainment » *User manual for Infotainment*

11 Air outlets in the central part of the dash panel — 95
12 Bar with keys depending on the equipment fitted:
- Left seat heating — 71
- Rear window heater — 65
- Central locking system — 53
- Hazard warning light system button — 63
- **PASSENGER AIRBAG ON OFF** Warning light for the front seat passenger airbag — 19
- Right seat heating — 71

13 Interior rear-view mirror — 68
14 Memory card slot (in the front passenger storage compartment) » *User manual Infotainment*
15 Front passenger airbag — 16
16 Storage compartment on the front passenger side — 80
17 Key switch for switching off the front passenger airbag (in front passenger storage compartment) — 19
18 Air outlet vent — 95
19 Power window in the front passenger door — 58
20 Door opening lever — 50
21 Bar with keys depending on the equipment fitted:
- START STOP — 104
- Stability Control (ESC deactivation / activation of the ASR) — 114
- Parking aid — 116
- Tyre Press. Loss Indicator — 125

22 Light switch — 60
23 Bonnet release lever — 151
24 Regulator for headlamp beam adjustment for the headlights — 60
25 Lever for adjusting the steering wheel — 9
26 Ignition lock — 101
27 Fuse box — 181
28 Pedals — 108
29 Cup holder: — 76
- with ashtray — 77
- with multimedia support — 79

30 Coin and credit card holder — 76
31 Handbrake lever — 107
32 Depending on equipment fitted:
- Gear shift lever (manual gearbox) — 108
- Selector lever (automatic gearbox) — 109

33 Storage compartment — 76
34 USB / AUX input » *Infotainment Manual*, chapter *USB/AUX Inputs*

35 Depending on equipment fitted:
- 12 volt power socket 78
- Cigarette lighter 77

36 Depending on equipment fitted:
- Operating controls for the heating 96
- Operating controls for the air conditioning system 97
- Operating controls for Climatronic 97

Note

The layout of the controls on right-hand drive vehicles differs partially from that shown in » Fig. 18. The symbols on the controls and switches are the same as for left-hand drive models.

Instruments and warning lights

Instrument cluster

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Overview 28
Revolution counter 28
Display 29
Coolant temperature gauge 29
Fuel gauge 30
Counter for distance driven 30
31

The instrument cluster gives the driver basic information such as the current speed, engine speed, the state of some vehicle systems and the like.

If there is a fault in the instrument cluster, the following message will appear in the display.

M **Error: instrument cluster. Workshop!**

S **COMBINED INSTRUM_WORKSHOP**

Seek help from a specialist garage.

WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for road safety.

Note

If the message **SAFE CP** appears in the instrument cluster display, the component protection for the instrument cluster is active. Further information » page 138, *Component protection*.

Overview

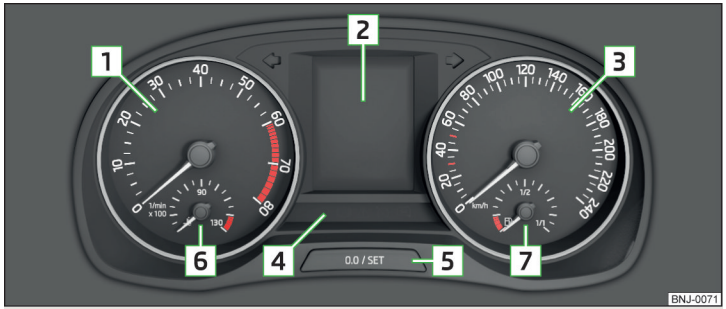


Fig. 19 **Instrument cluster - Version 1**

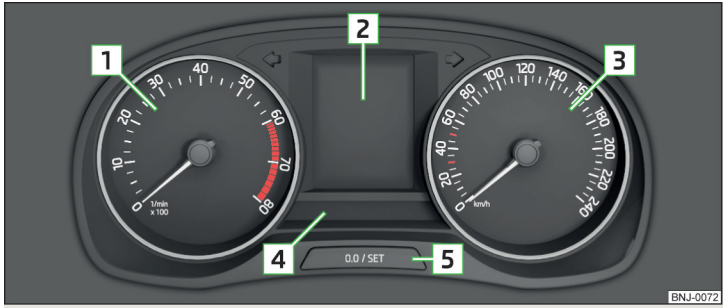


Fig. 20 **Instrument cluster - Version 2**

Read and observe ! on page 27 first.

1 Engine revolutions counter » page 28
› with warning lights » page 31
2 Display » page 29
3 Speedometer
› with warning lights » page 31
4 Bar with warning lights » page 31
5 Button for:
› Setting the clock » page 31
› Reset counter for distance travelled (trip) » page 30
› Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval » page 46
6 Coolant temperature gauge » page 29
7 Fuel gauge » page 30

Revolution counter

Read and observe ! on page 27 first.

The tachometer 1 » Fig. 19 *on page 28* or » Fig. 20 *on page 28* shows the actual engine speed per minute.

The beginning of the red scale range of the tachometer indicates the maximum permitted engine speed of a driven-in and operating warm engine.

You should shift into the next highest gear before the red scale of the revolution counter is reached or select mode **D** on the automatic gearbox.

The gear recommendation is important to note in order to maintain the optimum engine speed » page 39.

! CAUTION

The pointer of the tachometer must reach the red area for only a short time - there is a risk of engine damage!

Display

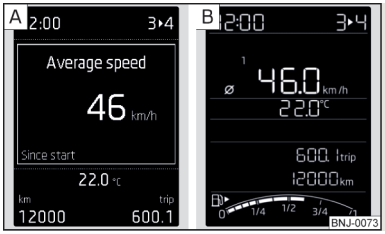


Fig. 21
Display types

Read and observe ! on page 27 first.

Display types » Fig. 21
A MAXI DOT display
B Segment display

The following information will be displayed.
› Exterior temperature information
› Fuel gauge[1] » page 30
› Distance travelled » page 30
› Time » page 31
› Warning lights » page 31
› Information system data » page 39

! CAUTION
Pull out the ignition key if coming in contact with the display (e.g. when cleaning) to prevent any possible damage. On vehicles with a starter button, switch off the ignition and open the driver's door.

Coolant temperature gauge

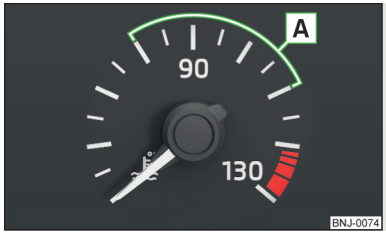


Fig. 22
Coolant temperature gauge

Read and observe ! on page 27 first.

Applies to cars with the instrument cluster - Version 1 » Fig. 19 *on page 28*.

The display » Fig. 22 provides information about the engine coolant temperature.

The display only works if the ignition is switched on.

Cold range
The pointer in the left of the scale indicates that the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature. Avoid high speeds, full throttle and high engine loads. This prevents possible damage to the engine.

The operating range
The engine has reached its operating temperature as soon as the pointer moves into the middle of the scale A » Fig. 22.

High temperature range
The coolant temperature is too high if the pointer reaches the red area of the scale.

! CAUTION
- Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant.
- Never cover the radiator - there is a risk of the engine overheating.

[1] Applies only to the segment display.

Note

On vehicles with the multifunction display, the coolant temperature can be shown on the display by the corresponding driving data entry being selected » page 40, *Information overview*.

Fuel gauge

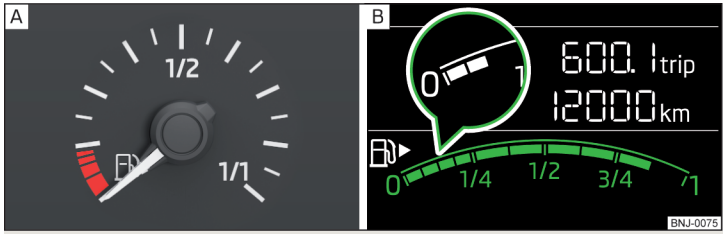


Fig. 23 **Fuel gauge: Version 1 / version 2**

Read and observe ! on page 27 first.

Fuel gauge types » Fig. 23

A Display in the instrument cluster - Version 1

B In the display of the instrument cluster - Version 2

The display provides information on the fuel level in the container.

The display only works if the ignition is switched on.

The fuel tank has a capacity of about 45 litres.

The reserve zone is indicated by the red area of the scale » Fig. 23 - A or by displaying only the last two segments of the scale » Fig. 23 - B in the magnifying glass.

The warning light lights up when the fuel level reaches the reserve range » page 35 .

CAUTION

Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.

Note

- After filling up, it can occur that during dynamic driving (e.g. numerous curves, braking, driving downhill and climbing a steep hill) the fuel gauge indicates approx. a fraction less. When stopping or during less dynamic driving, the fuel gauge displays the correct fuel level again. This is not a fault.
- The arrow ▶ next to the icon within the fuel gauge displays the installation location of the fuel filler on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

Counter for distance driven

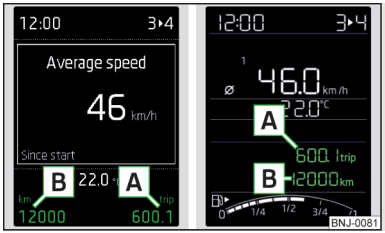


Fig. 24
Display: MAXI DOT display / Segment display

Read and observe ! on page 27 first.

Display » Fig. 24

A Counter for the distance travelled since the last reset (trip)

B Odometer

Reset counter for distance travelled (trip)

› Press button A » Fig. 25 *on page 31*.

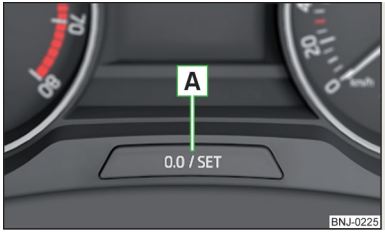


Fig. 25
Button in the instrument cluster

Read and observe ! on page 27 first.

› Switch on the ignition.
› Press and hold the button A » Fig. 25 until the **Time** is shown in the display.
› Release the button A and the system switches to the hour setting function.
› Press the button A again and set the hours.
› Wait around 4 seconds - the system switches to the minutes setting.
› Press the button A again and set the minutes.
› Wait around 4 seconds - the system switches to the start setting.

The time can also be set in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Device settings*.

Warning lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Handbrake 32
Brake system 32
Seat belt warning light 32
Power Steering / steering lock (engine start push-button) 32
Stability control (ESC) / Traction control (TCS) 33
Traction control system (TCS) deactivated 33
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 33
Rear fog light 33
Exhaust inspection system 33
Glow plug system (diesel engine) 34
Engine performance check (petrol engine) 34
Airbag system 34
Tyre pressure 34
Reserve fuel 35
Turn signal system 35
Trailer turn signal lights 35
Fog lights 35
Speed control / speed limiter 35
Brake pedal (automatic transmission) 35
Main beam 35
Automatic Transmission 36
Rear seat belt warning light 36
Generator 36
Coolant 36
Engine oil pressure too low 37
Engine oil level 37
Lamp failure 37
Diesel particulate filter (diesel engine) 37
Windscreen washer fluid level 38
START-STOP system 38
Display of a low temperature 38
Distance warning (front assistant) 38
Advance warning/emergency brake (Front assistant) 38
Service 38

The warning lights in the instrument cluster indicate certain functions or faults.

Some warning lights can be accompanied by acoustic signals and messages in the display of the instrument cluster.

After switching on the ignition, some warning lights **light up** briefly as a function test.

If the tested systems are OK, the corresponding warning lights go **out** a few seconds after switching on the ignition or after starting the engine.

Warning lights in the display
Depending on the importance the warning light ⚠ (danger) or ⚠ (warning) illuminate along with some of the warning lights in the list with the warning lights 4 » Fig. 19 *on page 28* and » Fig. 20 *on page 28*.

WARNING

- Ignoring illuminated indicator lights and related messages or instructions in the instrument cluster display may lead to serious personal injury or damage to the vehicle.
- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning lights system » page 63. The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.
- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. While working in the engine compartment, be sure to observe the following warnings » page 149, *Engine compartment*.

Handbrake

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

(P) illuminates - the hand brake is applied.

An acoustic signal will sound if you drive the vehicle above 5 km/h while the handbrake is still on.

M **Release the handbrake!**
S **RELEASE HANDBRAKE**

Brake system

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

(!) illuminates - the brake fluid level in the braking system is too low.

M **Brake fluid: owner's manual!**
S **BRAKE FLUID PLEASE CHECK**

› Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the level of the brake fluid.

WARNING

- If warning light (!) illuminates simultaneously with warning light (ABS) » page 33, (ABS) *Anti-lock braking system (ABS)* , STOP **do not continue your journey!** Seek help from a specialist garage.
- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance – there is a risk of an accident occurring!

Seat belt warning light

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates - the driver or front passenger has not fastened the seat belt.

At a speed of more than approximately 30 km/h the warning light flashes and an audible warning sounds at a time.

If the seat belt is not fastened by the driver or front passenger during the next approx. 2 seconds, the warning signal is deactivated and the warning light lights up permanently.

Power Steering / steering lock (engine start push-button)

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

Fault in the power steering

illuminates - this indicates a complete failure of the power steering and the steering assist has failed (significantly higher steering forces).

illuminates - this indicates a partial failure of the power steering and the steering forces can be greater.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Steering lock defective (engine start push-button)

An audible signal sounds as a warning.

flashes
M **Steering lock faulty. Stop!**
S **STOP VEHICLE STEERING FAULTY**

Park the vehicle, and **stop driving**. After switching off the ignition, it is no longer possible to lock the steering, to activate the electrical components (e.g. Infotainment etc.), to switch on the ignition again and to start the engine. Seek help from a specialist garage.

flashes
M **Steering lock: workshop!**
S **STEERING WORKSHOP**

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Steering lock not unlocked (engine start push-button)

flashes
M **Move the steering wheel!**
S **MOVE STEERING WHEEL**

› Move the steering wheel slightly back and forth, thereby facilitating unlocking the steering lock.

If the steering does also not unlock then, the help of a specialist garage is required.

Disconnecting the vehicle battery
If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the indicator light comes on after switching on the ignition.

The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.

If, after the motor is restarted and a short drive, the indicator light does not go out, there is a system error.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Stability control (ESC) / Traction control (TCS)

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

flashes - the ESC or TCS is currently being accessed.

ESC or TCS fault

Illuminates	M	**Error: stabilisation control (ESC)**
	S	**ESC ERROR**

or

Illuminates	M	**Error: traction control**
	S	**ASR ERROR**

Seek help from a specialist garage.

If the warning light comes on after starting the engine, the TCS may be switched off for technical reasons.
› Switch the ignition off and on again.

If the warning light does not illuminate after you switch the engine back on, the ASR is fully functional again.

Disconnecting the vehicle battery
If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the indicator light comes on after switching on the ignition.

The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.

If, after a short drive, the indicator light does not go out, there is a system error.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

For more information on the ESC system » page 114, *Stability Control (ESC)* or TCS system » page 115, *Traction control (TCS)*.

Traction control system (TCS) deactivated

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates - the TCS -System is disabled.

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates - there is an ABS fault.

M	**Error: ABS**
S	**ABS ERROR**

The vehicle will only be braked by the normal brake system without the ABS.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

! WARNING
- If warning light illuminates simultaneously with warning light » page 32, *Brake system* , **do not continue your journey!** Seek help from a specialist garage.
- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance – there is a risk of an accident occurring!

Rear fog light

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates - the rear fog light is switched on.

Exhaust inspection system

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates - there is a fault in the emission control system. The system makes possible operation emergency mode - there may be a noticeable reduction in engine performance.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Glow plug system (diesel engine)

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

flashes - there is a fault in the engine management system. The system makes possible operation emergency mode - there may be a noticeable reduction in engine performance.

There is a fault in the glow plug system if the warning light does not come on or illuminates continuously.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

EPC Engine performance check (petrol engine)

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

EPC illuminates - there is a fault in the engine management system. The system makes possible operation emergency mode - there may be a noticeable reduction in engine performance.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Airbag system

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

System fault
illuminates - there is a fault in the airbag system.

M **Error: airbag**
S **AIRBAG ERROR**

Seek help from a specialist garage.

The front passenger airbag has been disabled with the key switch
Illuminates for around 4 seconds after the ignition has been switched on;

OFF in the letters **PASSENGER AIR BAG ON/OFF** in the middle of the dash panel illuminates after switching on the ignition » page 19.

One of the airbags or a belt tensioner has been disabled by the diagnostic tool
illuminates for approximately 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on and then flashes again for approximately 12 seconds.

M **Airbag/ belt tensioner deactivated.**
S **AIRBAG/ BELT TENSIONER OFF**

! WARNING
If a fault in the airbag system occurs, there is a risk of the system not being triggered in the event of an accident! Therefore, this must be checked immediately by a specialized garage.

Tyre pressure

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

Change of tyre pressure values
illuminates - in one of the tyres there was a pressure change.

An audible signal sounds as a warning.

› Immediately reduce speed and avoid sudden steering and braking manoeuvres.
› Stop the vehicle, turn the ignition off and check the tyres and their inflation pressure » page 161.
› Correct the tyre pressure, if necessary or replace the affected wheel » page 168 or use the repair kit » page 172.
› Store the tyre pressure values in the system » page 126.

System fault
flashes for approximately 1 minute and remains lit - there may be a fault in the tyre pressure monitoring system.

› Stop the vehicle, turn the ignition off and start the engine again.

If the warning light flashes again after the engine has started, there is a system error.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Disconnecting the vehicle battery
If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the indicator light comes on after switching on the ignition.

The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.

If, after a short drive, the indicator light does not go out, there is a system error.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Other incidents

The following reasons can also apply if the warning light is illuminated.

- The vehicle is loaded on one side. Distribute loads as evenly as possible.
- The wheels of one axle are loaded more heavily (e.g. when towing a trailer or when driving uphill or downhill).
- Snow chains are fitted.
- A wheel has been changed.

CAUTION

Under certain circumstances (e.g. sporty style of driving, wintry or unpaved roads) the warning light in the instrument cluster can be delayed or does not light up at all.

Reserve fuel

Read and observe on page 32 first.

illuminates - the fuel level in the fuel tank is at the reserve level (approximately 7 litres).

Please refuel. Range: ... km

PLEASE REFUEL RANGE ... km

An audible signal sounds as a warning.

Note

The text in the display goes out after refuelling and driving a short distance.

Turn signal system

Read and observe on page 32 first.

flashes - the left turn signal is turned on.

flashes - the right turn signal is turned on.

If there is a fault in the turn signal system, the warning light flashes at twice its normal rate. This does not apply when towing a trailer.

When the hazard warning light system is switched on, this will cause all of the turn signal lights as well as both warning lights to flash.

Trailer turn signal lights

Read and observe on page 32 first.

flashes - the trailer lights are switched on.

If a trailer is hitched and the warning light is not flashing, one of the trailer turn signal lights has failed.

An example message in the display of the instrument cluster

Trailer: check left turn signal!

TRAILER TURN SIG_ CHECK LEFT

Check the trailer bulbs.

Fog lights

Read and observe on page 32 first.

illuminates - the fog lamp are switched on.

Speed control / speed limiter

Read and observe on page 32 first.

illuminates - the vehicle is limited by the speed regulator system and/or the automatic distance control or by the speed limiter.

flashes - the speed set with the limiter has been exceeded.

Brake pedal (automatic transmission)

Read and observe on page 32 first.

Illuminates - apply the brake.

Main beam

Read and observe on page 32 first.

illuminates - the main beam or the headlight flasher is switched on.

Automatic Transmission

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

Gearbox overheated
The warning light is only shown in the MAXI DOTdisplay.

Illuminates	M	**Gearbox overheated. Stop! Owner's manual!**
	S	**STOP VEHICLE GEARBOX OVERHEAT**
Illuminates	M	**Gearbox overheated.**
	S	**GEARBOX OVERHEATED**

› **do not continue to drive!** Stop the vehicle and turn off the engine.

You can continue your journey as soon as the warning light disappears.

If the warning light does not go out, do not continue driving. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Transmission problem
The warning light is only shown in the MAXI DOTdisplay.

Illuminates	M	**Gearbox faulty. Workshop!**
	S	**GEARBOX FAULTY WORKSHOP**
Illuminates	M	**Error: gearbox. Reverse gear not available.**
	S	**GEARBOX ERROR REV_ GEAR NOT AVAIL**
Illuminates	M	**Error: gearbox**
	S	**GEARBOX ERROR**

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Rear seat belt warning light

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates - a rear seat belt is not fastened.

illuminates - a rear seat belt is fastened.

When the seat belt is fastened/unfastened, the particular light lights up briefly and indicates the current belt status!

Generator

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates - while the engine is running the battery is not being charged.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

! CAUTION
If in addition to the light the light lights up while driving, **stop driving** - risk of engine damage! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Coolant

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

Coolant level too low

Illuminates	M	**Check coolant! Owner's manual!**
	S	**ENGINE COOLANT PLEASE CHECK**

› Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the coolant level » page 155, *Checking the coolant level*.

If the coolant level is within the specified range and the warning light illuminated again after ignition on, then there may be a malfunction of the cooling fan.

› Switch off the ignition.
› Check the fuse for the radiator fan, replace if necessary.

If the coolant level and the fan fuse are OK and the warning light illuminates again after ignition on **do not continue to drive!**

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Coolant temperature too high

Illuminates	M	**Engine overheat. Stop! Owner's manual!**
	S	**ENGINE OVERHEAT STOP**

› Stop the vehicle and turn off the engine.
› Continue your journey only after the warning light has disappeared.

Engine oil pressure too low

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

⚠ flashes - the engine oil pressure is too low.

M **Oil pressure: stop! Owner's manual!**
S **STOP VEHICLE OIL PRESSURE**

› Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level.

Even if the oil level is correct, **do not drive any further** if the warning light is flashing. Also do not leave the engine running at an idling speed.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

! CAUTION

Do not continue if for some reason it is not possible to fill with engine oil under the current circumstances! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Engine oil level

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

Engine oil level too low

⚠ Illuminates
M **Oil level: add oil!**
S **ADD OIL**

› Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level, top up if necessary.

The warning light will go out if the bonnet is left open for more than 30 seconds. If no engine oil has been replenished, the warning light will come on again after driving about 100 km.

Engine oil level too high

⚠ Illuminates
M **Reduce oil level!**
S **OIL LEVEL TOO HIGH**

› Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level.

In the event of a high oil level, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Fault on the engine oil level sensor

⚠ Illuminates
M **Oil sensor: workshop!**
S **OIL SENSOR WORKSHOP**

Seek help from a specialist garage.

! CAUTION

Do not continue if for some reason it is not possible to fill with engine oil under the current circumstances! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Lamp failure

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

⚠ illuminates - one of the lamps is defective. A message will appear concerning the affected lamp.

An example message in the display of the instrument cluster
M **Check right dipped headlight beam!**
S **DIPPED HEADLIGHT CHECK RIGHT**

Diesel particulate filter (diesel engine)

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

The diesel particulate filter separates the soot particles from the exhaust. The soot particles collect in the diesel particulate filter where they are burnt on a regular basis.

⚠ Illuminates - the filter is clogged with soot.

To clean the filter, and where traffic conditions permit » !, drive as follows for at least 15 minutes or until the indicator light goes out.
✓ 4th or 5th gear engaged (automatic transmission: Position D/S).
✓ Vehicle speed at least 70 km/h.
✓ Engine speed between 1,800-2,500 rpm.

If the filter is properly cleaned, the warning light extinguishes.

If the filter is not properly cleaned, the warning light does not go out and the warning light begins to flash.

M **Particulate filter: owner's manual!**
S **PARTICLE FILTER OWNER MANUAL**

Seek help from a specialist garage.

WARNING

- Always adjust the speed and driving style to the actual weather, road, terrain and traffic conditions. The recommendations indicated by the warning light must not tempt you to disregard the national regulations for road traffic.
- The diesel particulate filter reaches very high temperatures - there is a fire hazard and serious injury could be caused. Therefore, never stop the vehicle at places where the underside of your vehicle can come into contact with flammable materials such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel or such like.

CAUTION

- As long as the warning light illuminates, one must take into account an increased fuel consumption and a power reduction of the engine.
- Using diesel fuel with increased sulphur content can significantly reduce the service life of the diesel particle filter. A ŠKODA Partner will be able to tell you which countries use diesel fuel with increased sulphur content.

Note

We encourage you to avoid constant short journeys. This will improve the combustion process of the soot particles in the diesel particulate filter.

Windscreen washer fluid level

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates - the windscreen washer fluid level is too low.

M Add washer fluid!
S WASHER FLUID PLEASE TOP UP

› Fill up the windscreen washer fluid.

START-STOP system

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

The warning lights Ⓐ indicates the state of the START STOP system » page 104, *START-STOPsystem*.

Display of a low temperature

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates - the outside temperature is below +4° C.

WARNING

Even at temperatures around +4 °C, black ice may still be on the road surface! Do not only rely upon the information given on the outside temperature display that there is no ice on the road.

Distance warning (front assistant)

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates - the safe distance to the vehicle in front is below the minimum.

The warning light is only shown in the MAXI DOTdisplay.

Information on the Front Assistant system» page 122.

Advance warning/emergency brake (Front assistant)

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates - the system has recognized the risk of a collision or automatically triggered an emergency braking manoeuvre.

Information on the Front Assistant system» page 122.

Service

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates - note regarding a due service appointment » page 46, *Service interval display*.

Information system

Driver information system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Door, luggage compartment or bonnet warning 39
Overspeed warning at 120 km/h 39
Auto-check control 39
Gear recommendation 39

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the information system vie the display of the instrument cluster provides the following information.

› Driving data (multifunction display) » page 40.
› Data relating to the Maxi DOT display » page 42.
› Service interval display » page 46.
› Selector lever positions for an automatic transmission » page 109.
› Information and alerts in the Assist systems » page 114.

WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.

Door, luggage compartment or bonnet warning

Read and observe ! on page 39 first.

If at least one door is open, or the boot or bonnet is **open**, the display indicates the relevant open door or boot/bonnet.

An acoustic signal will also sound if you drive the vehicle above 6 km/h when a door is open.

Overspeed warning at 120 km/h

Read and observe ! on page 39 first.

This function is only enabled in certain countries.

An audible warning signal will sound when the vehicle speed exceeds 120 km/h. The audible warning is switched off once the vehicle speed falls below 120 km/h.

Auto-check control

Read and observe ! on page 39 first.

Certain functions and conditions of individual vehicle systems are checked continuously when the ignition is switched on.

While the operational faults remain unrectified, the messages are always indicated again. After they are displayed for the first time, the warning lights ⚠ (danger) or ⚠ (warning) continue to be indicated without information for the driver.

Gear recommendation

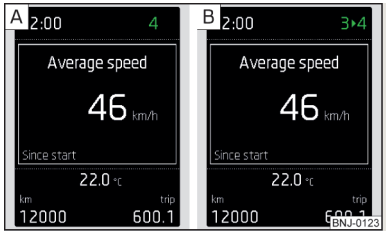


Fig. 26
Information on the selected gear / gear recommendation

Read and observe ! on page 39 first.

A suitable gear is engaged, if necessary, a recommendation to shift to high or lower gear is displayed.

A suitably engaged gear helps to reduce the fuel consumption and assist the service life and reliability of the engine.

Display » Fig. 26

A Optimal gear engaged
B Recommended gear

Recommended gear
Besides showing the engaged gear, the arrow icon ▶ and the recommended gear are displayed.

For instance, if 3 ▶ 4 appears in this display, this means it is recommended that you shift from 3rd into 4th Switch gear.

For vehicles with automatic transmission the recommended gear will be shown provided the mode for manual switching (Tiptronic) is selected.

WARNING

The driver is always responsible for selecting the correct gear in different driving situations, such as overtaking.

Driving data (Multifunction display)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation ____ 40
Information overview ____ 40
Warning when exceeding the set speed ____ 41
Memory ____ 42

The driving data display is only possible with the ignition switched on.

After the ignition is switched on, the function that was last selected before switching off the ignition is displayed.

The setting of the units, as well as the display of some information in the Infotainment can be hidden or shown » *Operating instructions Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - Vehicle settings*.

WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.

Operation



Fig. 27 **Buttons / wheel: on the operating lever / on the multifunction steering wheel**

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

The selection as well as the settings of the data values can be operated with the buttons on the operating lever as well as on the multi-function steering wheel » Fig. 27.

Description of the operation

Button / dial	Action	Operation
A	Briefly press at the top or down	Select data / set data values
B	Press briefly	View information / confirm specification
C	Turn upwards or downwards	Select data / set data values
	Press briefly	View information / confirm specification

Information overview

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

Overview of driving data (depending on the vehicle equipment).

Range
The detail provides information about the distance in km, that can be travelled with the current tank and with the same driving style.

If you drive more efficiently this value can increase.

Average fuel consumption
The indication is calculated continuously since the last deletion of the memory.

After erasing the memory, no data will appear for the first 100 m driven.

Current fuel consumption
You can use this information to adapt your driving style to the desired fuel consumption.

When the vehicle is stationary or slowly moving the fuel consumption is displayed in l/h (on models for some countries the following appears --,- km/l).

Oil temperature
If the engine oil temperature is in the range of 80-110 °C, the engine operating temperature has been reached.

If the oil temperature is lower than 80 °C or above 110 °C, avoid high engine revs, full throttle and high engine loads.

If the oil temperature is lower than 50 °C or if there is a fault in the system for checking the oil temperature **---** are displayed instead of the oil temperature.

Warning against speeding
Set the speed limit, e.g. for the maximum permissible speed in towns
» page 41.

Current driving speed
The display is identical to the display on the speedometer.

Average speed
The indication is calculated continuously since the last deletion of the memory.

After erasing the memory, no data will appear for the first 300 m driven.

Distance travelled
The distance travelled since the memory was last erased is displayed.

The maximum distance indicated is 9,999 km. The indicator is automatically set back to zero if this period is exceeded.

Driving time
The time travelled since the memory was last erased is displayed.

The maximum distance indicated is 99 hours and 59 minutes. The indicator is automatically set back to zero if this period is exceeded.

Coolant temperature
If the engine oil temperature is in the range 80-110 °C, the engine operating temperature is reached.

If the temperature lies below 80 °C or above 110 °C, avoid high engine revs, full throttle and high engine loads.

Warning when exceeding the set speed

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

The system offers the possibility to set a speed limit beyond which an audible alarm will sound and the following warning message appears.

M **Speed ... exceeded.**
S **SPEED TOO HIGH**

Adjust the speed limit while the vehicle is stationary
› Select the menu item **Warning at** at (M) or (S) and confirm.
› Set the desired speed limit.
› Confirm the set value, or wait several seconds; your settings will be saved automatically.

The speed limit can be set in 5 km/h intervals.

Adjusting the speed limit while the vehicle is moving
› Select the menu item **Warning at** at (M) or (S) and confirm.
› Drive at the desired speed.
› Confirm the current speed as the speed limit.

The set speed limit can be manually adjusted later if needed.

Deactivate speed limit
› Select the menu item **Warning at** at (M) or (S) and confirm.
› Confirm the stored value of the speed limits.

The speed limit will be disabled.

The speed limit set mode is stored even after the ignition is switched off and on. After a gap between driving exceeding 2 hours, the pre-set speed limit is deactivated.

Memory

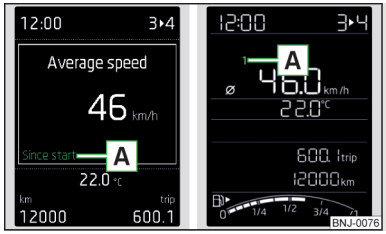


Fig. 28
Memory display: MAXI DOT display (Ⓜ) / Segment display (Ⓢ)

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

Following driving data is stored in three locations.

› Average fuel consumption.
› Distance driven.
› Average speed.
› Driving time.

Display of the selected memory in the display at position A » Fig. 28.

Since start (Ⓜ) or "1" (Ⓢ)
The memory collates the driving information from the moment the ignition is switched on until it is switched off.

New data will also flow into the calculation of the current driving information if the trip is continued **within 2 hours** after switching off the ignition.

If the trip is interrupted for **more than 2 hours**, the memory is automatically erased.

Long-term (Ⓜ) and "2" (Ⓢ)
The memory gathers driving information from any number of individual journeys up to a total of 99 hours and 59 minutes driving or 9,999 kilometres driven.

The indicator is automatically set back to zero if one of the indicated values is exceeded.

Since refuel (Ⓜ) or "3" (Ⓢ)
The memory gathers driving information since the last refuelling.

The memory is erased automatically the next time you fill up.

Select memory
› Select the driving data information desired.
› Confirm details again to select the desired memory.

Resetting
› Select the driving data information desired.
› Select the desired memory.
› Reset the selected memory by holding pressed.

Note
Disconnecting the vehicle battery will delete all memory data.

MAXI DOT display

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Main menu 42
Operation using the operating lever 43
Operation using the multi-function steering wheel 43
Menu item**Navigation** 44
Menu item**Audio** 44
Menu item**Telephone** 44
Menu item**Assist systems** 45
Compass point display 45

The MAXI DOT display (following only as display) is a user interface which, depending on the equipment configuration, delivers information about the Infotainment, the multifunction display, the assistance systems etc.

WARNING
Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.

Main menu

Read and observe ! on page 42 first.

Call up the main menu
› Press and hold the button A on the operating lever » Fig. 29 *on page 43*.

or

› Press and hold the button G on the multi-function steering wheel » Fig. 30 *on page 43*.

Main menu items (depending on vehicle equipment)
- **Driving data** » page 40
- **Assist systems** » page 45
- **Navigation** » page 44
- **Audio** » page 44
- **Telephone** » page 44;
- **Vehicle** » page 39, *Auto-check control*

The menus can be opened using the buttons on the control lever » Fig. 29 *on page 43* or on the multi-function steering wheel » Fig. 30 *on page 43*.

Note
- If warning messages are displayed, these messages must first be confirmed to access the main menu.
- The travel mode can be set in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (SETUP button)*.
- For vehicles without Infotainment, the display language can only be adjusted by a specialist garage.

Operation using the operating lever

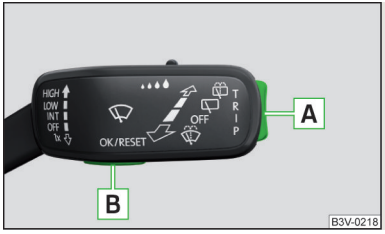


Fig. 29
Buttons: On the operating lever

Read and observe ! on page 42 first.

Description of the operation by means of the buttons on the operating lever

Button	Action	Operation
A	Briefly press at the top or down	Switch between menu items / menus
	Press and hold at the top or down	Display main menu
B	Press briefly	Confirm menu item / menu

Operation using the multi-function steering wheel

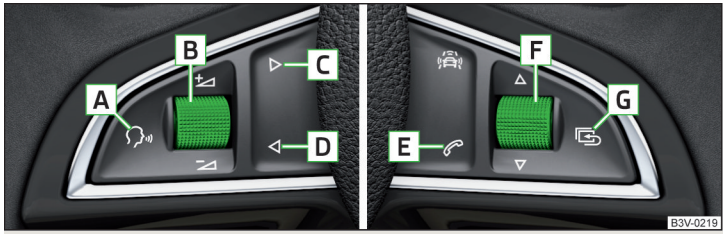


Fig. 30 **Buttons/dials: On the multi-function steering wheel**

Read and observe ! on page 42 first.

Description of the operation by means of the buttons/dials on the multi-function steering wheel

Button / dial	Action	Operation
A	Press briefly	Voice control on/off / Sound off /on (applies to vehicles without voice control)
	Press and hold button	Voice control of theSmartLink switch on connection (if supported by the connected device)
B	Press briefly	Switch sound on/off / Switch track playback on/off
	Turn up	Increase volume
	Turn down	Decrease volume
C	Press briefly	To the next radio channel or change to the playback track
	Press and hold button	Fast forward within the track

Button / dial	Action	Operation
D	Press briefly	to the previous radio channel or change to the playback track[a]
	Press and hold button	Fast reverse within the track
E	Press briefly	Take the call / end the call / Menu **Telephone** display / display call list / call the selected contact
	Press and hold button	Reject call / Redial last call
F	Press briefly	Confirm menu item / menu / Repeat the last navigation announcement or clarify / interrupt traffic report
	Turn up	Previous menu item / track[a] / Show available list (e.g. list of available channels, list of the last destinations, call list)
	Turn down	Next menu item / track / View available list (e.g. List of available channels, list the last destinations, call list)
G	Press briefly	Return to a previous level in the menu
	Press and hold button	Display main menu

[a] Valid for pressing within about 4 s from the beginning of the given track. Pressing after about 4 seconds from the beginning of the track, starts the playback from the beginning of the track.

Note

Depending on equipment not all functions may be available. The system can indicate this fact by a text message in the display of the instrument cluster or in the Infotainment display.

Menu itemNavigation

Read and observe ! on page 42 first.

Select menu item Navigation

› Select and confirm **Navigation** in the main menu.

Route guidance takes place

Graphical driving recommendations and other route and destination information are displayed after selection.

No route guidance is carried out

A compass/vehicle symbol is shown to display the current vehicle position in relation to the compass after selection.

Turn setting wheel F » Fig. 30 *on page 43* on the multifunction steering wheel to display the **Last destinations** menu.

The menu shows the **Home address** menu item and a list of recent destinations.

When you select one of the menu items, the destination name and the following items are displayed.

- **OK** - Start navigation
- **Cancel** - Return to the **Navigation** menu – the compass/vehicle symbol will be displayed

If the home address is not defined when the menu item **Home address** is selected, the following message appears: **Please enter the home address on the infotainment system.**

Menu itemAudio

Read and observe ! on page 42 first.

Select menu item Audio

› Select and confirm **Audio** in the main menu.

The following information can be displayed in the display.

- **Radio**
  - Currently played station (name/frequency)
  - The selected frequency range (e.g. **FM**) optionally with the number of the station button (e.g. **FM3**), if the station is stored in the memory list
  - List of available station (if more than 5 stations can be received)
  - TP traffic announcements.
- **Media**
  - Name of the track being played, if necessary, further information regarding title (e.g. artist, album name), if this information is stored as a so called ID3 tag on the audio source.

Menu itemTelephone

Read and observe ! on page 42 first.

Select menu item Telephone

› Select and confirm **Telephone** in the main menu.

› Turn the dial F » Fig. 30 *on page 43*.

The system displays a call list.

If the call list includes no entries, the following message appears **No entries available.**

The following symbols are displayed next to each entry in the call list.

- Incoming call
- Outgoing call
- Missed call

Outgoing call

- **Cancel** - Ends the call

Incoming call

- **Answer** - Answer a call
- **Reject** - Reject a call
- **Ignore** - Mute the ringer (this option is only available if there is no other call)

Ongoing call or conference call

- **Hang up** - End a call
- **Hold** - Hold the call
- **Continue** - Continue held call
- **Mic. off** - Microphone off
- **Mic. on** - Microphone on
- **Private** - Switch the call to the telephone
- **Hands-free** - Toggles the call to the device

On-going and held call

- **Hang up** - End on-going call
- **Call wait.** - Switch to held call
- **Conference** - Make a conference call[1)]
- **Mic. off** - Microphone off
- **Mic. on** - Microphone on
- **Private** - Switch current call to the phone
- **Hands-free** - Switch current call to the device

Symbols in the display

- Charge status of the telephone battery[1)]
- Signal strength[1)]
- A telephone is connected to the unit
- Missed calls (if there are several missed calls, the number of calls is shown next to the symbol)
- Switch-off microphone

[1)] This function is only supported by some mobile phones.

Menu itemAssist systems

Read and observe ! on page 42 first.

Select menu item Assist systems

› Select and confirm **Assist systems** in the main menu.

or

› Press the button on the multi-function steering wheel .

In the menu item **Assist systems** the system Front Assist can be enabled / disabled.

Compass point display



Fig. 31
Compass display

Read and observe ! on page 42 first.

Applies to vehicles with factory-installed navigation system.

In the display when the ignition is on, an arrow symbol as well as an abbreviation for the corresponding direction (in relation to the current direction of travel) are displayed » Fig. 31.

Service interval display

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval 46
Service messages 46
Resetting the service interval display 46

The service interval display shows the time and mileage to the next service event.

The information regarding the service intervals can be found in the service schedule.

Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval

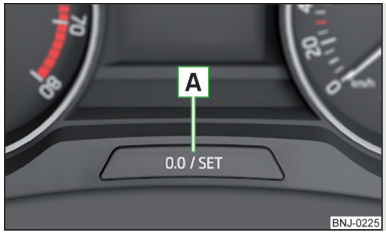


Fig. 32
Button in the instrument cluster

› Switch on the ignition.
› Press and hold the button A » Fig. 32 until the **Service** is shown in the display.
› Release the button A.

In the display the symbol appears for 4 seconds and the following message for the kilometre or days to the next service appointment.

M **Oil service ... / ... Inspection ... / ...**
S **OIL SERV_ IN ... OR ... INSPECT_ IN ... OR ...**

Service messages

Messages before reaching the scheduled service date
Before the next service date has been reached, the symbol as well as a message about the mileage or days until the next service event appears in the display after switching on the ignition.

Messages upon reaching scheduled service date
Once the service interval is reached, the icon appears in the display after the ignition is switched on, as well as the following message, for example.

M **Oil service now!**
S **OIL SERVICE NOW**

or

M **Inspection now!**
S **INSPECTION NOW**

or

M **Oil service and inspection now!**
S **OIL SERVICE + INSP_ NOW**

Resetting the service interval display

We recommend that the display be reset by a specialist garage.

We recommend that you do not reset the service interval display yourself. Incorrectly setting the service interval display could cause problems to the vehicle.

Variable service interval
For vehicles with variable service intervals, after resetting the oil change service display in a specialist garage, the values of the new service interval are displayed, which are based on the previous operating conditions of the vehicle.

These values are then continuously matched according to the actual operating conditions of the vehicle.

SmartGate

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Connection to SmartGate using Wi-Fi 47
Connection using Wi-Fi direct to SmartGate 48
SmartGate web interface 48

SmartGate constitutes a system, which transmit certain driving data (such as fuel consumption, speed or similar) via Wi-Fi and Wi-Fi Direct.

The ŠKODA compatible communications device (e.g. phone, tablet, notebook) offer the possibility to further transmit the received data.

More information on available applications, a list of compatible communication devices and on SmartGate, can be found on the ŠKODA Internet pages.

Use the Service App application to update the SmartGate software. You can fine information on this application on the ŠKODA Internet pages.

WARNING

- The national legal regulations for using mobile communication devices in a vehicle must be observed.
- Do not fit the equipment or mounts to be connected onto airbag covers or within the immediate deployment range of the airbags.
- Never leave a connected device in the deployment area of an airbag, on a seat, on the dash panel or any another area, from which it can be thrown during a sudden braking manoeuvre, an accident or a collision - there is a risk of injury.

CAUTION

ŠKODA accepts no responsibility for any problems caused by incompatibility or improper functioning of the communication equipment and the applications.

Note

- The ŠKODA applications, support communications devices with the Android operating system version 4.x.x and later and iOS 7.x.x and higher.
- With SmartGate, a device can be connected to two ongoing ŠKODA applications, possibly two devices, each with a respective current ŠKODA application.
- If you have forgotten your password for the connection to SmartGate, SmartGate must be reset to factory settings in a specialised workshop.

Connection to SmartGate using Wi-Fi

Read and observe ! and ! on page 47 first.

For a successful connection the following conditions must be met.

✓ Wi-Fi is turned on in the device to be connected.
✓ The ignition is switched on.

Connection set-up

› Can enable the connected device to search for available Wi-Fi networks (see operating instructions for the connected device).
› In the menu of the detected networks select "SmartGate_..."[1] or "DIRECT SmartGate_..."[1].
› Enter the password (the password is preset at the factory to the complete Vehicle Identification Number - enter capital letters).

Disconnection

The connection can be switched off in one of the following ways.

› By disconnecting the connected device from SmartGate.
› By turning off the Wi-Fi in the connected device.
› By switching off the ignition for more than 5 s (for vehicles with starter button - by turning off the engine and opening the driver's door).

Automatic connection

If the communication device once had a connection with SmartGate, then the connection is automatically restored under the following conditions.

✓ Wi-Fi is turned on in the device to be connected.
✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The device to be connected stores the password required for the connection check.

[1] The last six symbols of the VIN vehicle identification number of your vehicle are displayed at position ....

Connection using Wi-Fi direct to SmartGate

Read and observe ! and ! on page 47 first.

This type of connection is provided for communication devices and applications that support connection via Wi-Fi Direct.

Connection set-up

› Switch on the ignition.
› In the device to be connected start the ŠKODA application that supports connection via Wi-Fi Direct.
› In the application, select the connection function (e.g. "Connect"), this starts to search for available devices that support Wi-Fi Direct.
› In the menu of the detected networks select from the menu "SmartGate_..."[1].
› Enter the PIN code (the factory default setting for the password is the last six digits of the vehicle identification number).

If you want to connect to SmartGate from another vehicle, then after the start of the application, disconnect the previous connection by selecting the separation function (e.g. "Disconnect ").

Disconnection

The connection can be switched off in one of the following ways.
› In the application, the separation function (e.g. "Disconnect") is selected.
› By turning off the Wi-Fi Direct in the connected device.
› By switching off the ignition for more than 5 s (for vehicles with starter button - by turning off the engine and opening the driver's door).

Automatic connection

If the communication device once had a connection with SmartGate, then the connection is automatically restored after the start of the application.

SmartGate web interface

Read and observe ! and ! on page 47 first.

In the SmartGate Web interface it is possible to setup SmartGate and the Wi-Fi connection to SmartGate.

The following address must be entered via Wi Fi in the web browser of the connected device.

HTTP://192.168.123.1

The setting changes are only noticeable after pressing the buttons "Save" and "Reboot".

[1] The last six symbols of the VIN vehicle identification number of your vehicle are displayed at position ....

Unlocking and opening

Unlocking and locking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Locking/unlocking using the key via the lock cylinder 50
Unlocking/locking with the remote control key 50
Opening/closing the door 50
Unlocking / locking - KESSY 51
SafeLock 52
Individual settings 52
Locking/unlocking the vehicle with the central locking button 53
Child safety lock 53
Malfunctions 53

Your car is equipped with a central locking system.

The central locking system allows you to lock and unlock **all** doors, the fuel filler flap and boot lid at the same time.

Depending on the equipment configuration, the following is true after unlocking

› The turn signal lights flash twice as confirmation that the vehicle has been unlocked.
› The doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap are unlocked.
› The interior light, which is switched by the door contact, comes on.
› The SafeLock system is switched off.
› The warning icon in the driver door stops flashing.
› The anti-theft alarm system is deactivated.

If you unlock the vehicle and do not open a door or the boot lid within the next 45 seconds, the vehicle will lock again automatically and the SafeLock system or anti-theft alarm system will be switched on. This function is intended to prevent the car being unlocked unintentionally.

Depending on the equipment configuration, the following is true after locking

› The turn signal lights flash once as confirmation that the vehicle has been locked.
› The doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap are locked.
› The interior light switched by the door contact goes off.
› The SafeLock system is switched on.
› The warning light in the driver door begins flashing.
› The anti-theft alarm system is activated.

If the doors or the boot lid remain open after the vehicle doors have been locked, the turn signal lights do not flash until they have been closed.

WARNING

- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. Unauthorized persons, such as children, for example, could lock the car, turn on the ignition or start the engine - danger of injury and accidents!
- When leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle. The children might, for example, release the handbrake or take the vehicle out of gear. The vehicle could then start to move – risk of accident! These individuals would possibly not be able to leave the vehicle on their own or to help themselves. At very high or very low temperatures can be fatal!

CAUTION

- Each key contains electronic components; therefore it must be protected against moisture and severe shocks.
- Keep the groove of the keys absolutely clean. Impurities (textile fibres, dust, etc.) impair the function of the locking cylinder and ignition lock.
- The battery must be replaced if the central locking or anti-theft alarm system does react to the remote control at less than approx. 3 metres away » page 177.
- Always check that the vehicle is locked before leaving it.
- If the driver's door has been opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.

Note

In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed, the locked doors are automatically unlocked in order to enable rescuers to gain access to the vehicle.

Locking/unlocking using the key via the lock cylinder

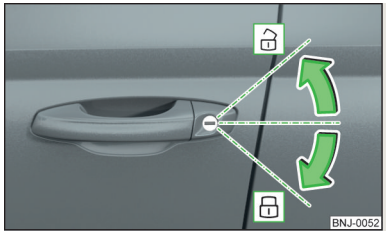


Fig. 33
Left side of the vehicle: Turning the key for unlocking and locking the vehicle

Read and observe ! and ! on page 49 first.

The key allows you to unlock or lock the vehicle via the lock cylinder in the driver's door » !.

Unlocking / locking the vehicle with the key » Fig. 33

- Unlocking the vehicle
- Locking the vehicle

! CAUTION

To unlock or lock the vehicle with the remote control key via the lock cylinder, first remove the cap of the lock cylinder » page 178.

Unlocking/locking with the remote control key

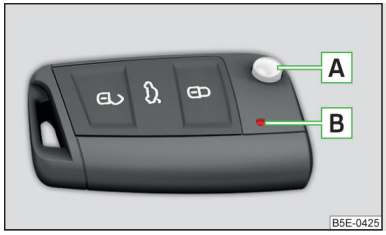


Fig. 34
Remote control key

Read and observe ! and ! on page 49 first.

Function and description of the remote control key » Fig. 34

- Unlocking the vehicle
- Locking the vehicle
- Unlocking / locking the boot lid
- A Button for folding the key in/out
- B Warning light

Unlocking / locking the boot lid

Briefly pressing the symbol key unlocks the boot lid. After unlocking, the boot lid can be opened with the button in the handle above the number plate.

Pressing and holding the symbol key releases the boot lid (partially opened).

If the boot lid is unlocked or released with the key symbol on the remote control key, then the lid is automatically locked after closing.

You can set a lock delay » page 56.

! CAUTION

- Operation of the remote control may temporarily be affected by signal interference from transmitters close to the car and which operate in the same frequency range (e.g. mobile phone, TV transmitter).
- Only operate the remote control when the doors and boot lid are closed and the vehicle is in your line of sight.
- The operating range of the remote control key is approx. 30 m. But this range of the remote control can be reduced if the batteries are weak.

i Note

For vehicles with the anti-theft alarm system, the acoustic signals can additionally also be enabled / disabled when unlocking / locking » *Infotainment manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (key CAR)*.

Opening/closing the door

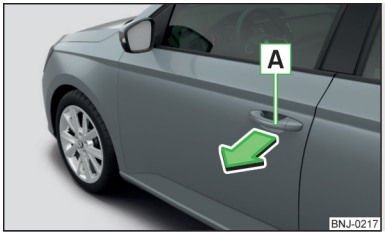


Fig. 35
Door handle

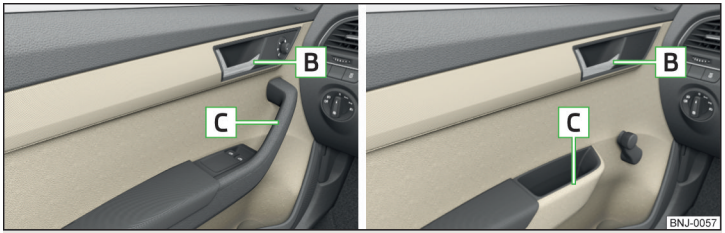


Fig. 36 **Door opening lever - Variant 1 / Variant 2**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 49 first.

Opening from the outside
› Unlock the vehicle.
› Pull on the door handle A in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 35.

Opening from the inside
› Pull on door opening lever B of the door and push the door away from you.

Closing from the inside
› Grasp pull handle C and close the door.

! WARNING

- Make sure that the door has closed correctly as it can open suddenly while the vehicle is being driven – danger to life.
- Only open and close the door when there is no one in the opening/closing sweep – risk of injury.
- An opened door can close spontaneously if there is a strong wind or the vehicle is on a slope – risk of injury.
- Never drive with the doors open - danger to life!

Unlocking / locking - KESSY

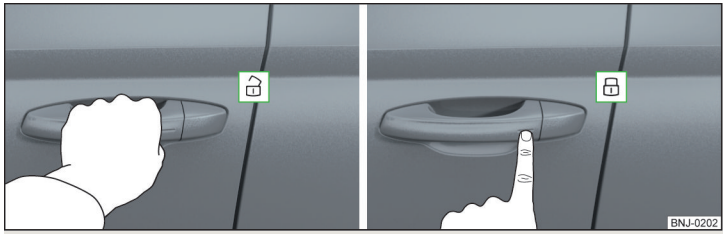


Fig. 37 **The front door handle**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 49 first.

The KESSY system (Keyless Entry Start Exit System) enables unlocking and locking of the vehicle without actively using the remote control key » Fig. 37.

Unlocking
Locking

Unlocking
› Grasp the door handle of the front door or cover the sensor -🔓- » Fig. 37 with the whole palm of your hand » !.

Locking
› Touch the sensor -🔒- » Fig. 37 with your fingers.

On vehicles fitted with automatic gearbox, the selector lever must be moved into the position **P** before unlocking.

Unlocking the boot lid
› Press the button in the handle of the boot lid » Fig. 41 *on page 56*.

If the vehicle is locked via the sensor -🔒-, it will not be possible to unlock it again in the following 2 seconds via the sensor -🔓- - prevents accidental unlocking.

Protection against inadvertently locking the key in the vehicle
If the key with which the vehicle has been unlocked is left in the passenger compartment, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. The turn signal lights flash four times as confirmation that the vehicle has been unlocked again. If no door is opened within approximately 45 seconds, the vehicle is automatically locked again.

If the key with which the vehicle was locked remains in the luggage compartment, the boot lid is released (partially opened). The turn signal lights flash four times as an indication that the vehicle has been unlocked again. The luggage compartment lid **remains released**(partially open). The other doors remain locked.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M **Key in vehicle.**

S **KEY IN VEHICLE**

An audible signal sounds additionally on vehicles which are fitted with the anti-theft alarm system, .

System fault

If there is a fault in the system, the following message will appear in the display of the instrument cluster.

M **Keyless access system faulty.**

S **KEYLESS ACCESS SYSTEM FAULTY**

CAUTION

- Do not use objects which might prevent direct contact between the hand and the grip sensor.
- Some types of gloves can affect the unlocking or locking device in the door handle.
- After leaving the car there is no automatic locking.
- The vehicle cannot be locked if the ignition has not been turned off.

SafeLock

Read and observe ! and ! on page 49 first.

The door locks are locked automatically if the vehicle is locked from the outside. The vehicle cannot now be opened from the inside.

This fact is pointed out by the following message on the display of the instrument cluster after switching off the ignition.

M **Check SAFELOCK! Owner's manual!**

S **CHECK SAFELOCK**

Switching off

The SafeLock can be switched off in one of the following ways.

› By locking twice within 2 seconds.

› By disabling interior monitoring » page 55, *Interior monitor and towing protection*.

If the vehicle is locked and the SafeLock system is switched off, the door can be opened separately from the inside by a single pull on the opening lever.

Switching on

The safelock switches on automatically the next time the vehicle is locked and unlocked.

Switch-off display

The warning icon in the driver door flashes for about 2 seconds fast, goes out and starts to flash regularly at longer intervals after about 30 seconds.

Switch-on display

The warning light flashes for around 2 seconds in quick succession, afterwards it begins to flash evenly at longer intervals.

WARNING

If the car is locked and the SafeLock system activated, no-one may remain in the car as it will then not be possible to either unlock a door or open a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!

Individual settings

Read and observe ! and ! on page 49 first.

The following functions of the central locking system can be set individually » *Infotainment user manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (button CAR)*.

Opening a single door

The function allows you to unlock only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap. The other doors and the boot lid remain locked and are only unlocked after being opened again.

Unlocking a vehicle side door

This function enables you to unlock both doors on the driver's side and the fuel filler flap. The other doors and the boot lid remain locked and are only unlocked after being opened again.

Unlock all doors

The function allows you to unlock all doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap. ▸

Automatic locking/unlocking
All doors are locked from a speed of around 15 km/h. The button in the handle of the boot lid is deactivated.

If the ignition key is withdrawn, the car is then automatically unlocked again. It is also possible to unlock the vehicle by pressing the central locking button.

Locking/unlocking the vehicle with the central locking button

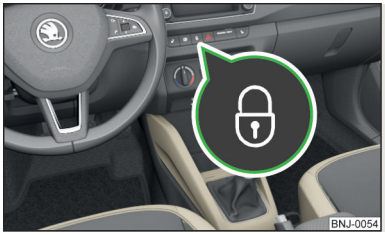


Fig. 38
Central locking button

Read and observe and on page 49 first.

If the vehicle has not been locked from outside, the » Fig. 38 button can be used to unlock or lock the vehicle.

Lock / Unlock » Fig. 38

If the icon in the button is lit, the vehicle is locked.

The central locking system also operates if the ignition is switched off.

The following applies after locking.
› Opening the doors and the boot lid from the outside is not possible.
› The doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by a single pull on the opening lever of the respective door.
› In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed, the locked doors are automatically unlocked in order to enable rescuers to gain access to the vehicle.

WARNING
- Doors locked from the inside make it difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – danger to life!
- If the Safelock system is switched on » page 52, the door opening levers and the central locking buttons do not operate.

CAUTION
If at least one door has been opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.

Child safety lock



Fig. 39 **Rear door: left / right**

Read and observe and on page 49 first.

The child safety lock prevents the rear door from being opened from the inside. The door can only be opened from the outside.

Switching the child safety system on and off » Fig. 39

Switching on
Switching off

You can switch the child safety lock on and off using the vehicle key.

Malfunctions

Read and observe and on page 49 first.

Failure of the central locking
Upon failure of the central locking system the key only unlocks and locks the driver's door. The other doors and the boot lid can be opened and closed in an emergency.
› Unlocking / locking » page 50 for vehicles without remote control.
› Unlocking / locking for vehicles with remote control » page 178.
› Emergency locking of the door » page 179.
› Emergency unlocking of the boot lid » page 179.

Displaying an error
If the warning icon in the driver's door initially flashes quickly for around 2 seconds, and then lights up for 30 seconds without interruption before flashing again slowly, you will need to seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

Discharged battery in the remote control key
If the red warning light B » Fig. 34 *on page 50* does not flash when you press a button on the remote control key the battery is dead.

If the voltage of the battery in the remote control key is too low, the following message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

M **Change the key battery!**
S **KEY BATTERY PLEASE CHANGE**

Replace the battery » page 177.

Anti-theft alarm system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Activating/deactivating 54
Interior monitor and towing protection 55

The anti-theft alarm system increases the level of protection against theft and break-in.

The alarm system triggers audible and visual signals if an attempt is made to break into the vehicle (hereafter referred to only as alarm).

Triggering the alarm
The alarm is triggered when the following unauthorized actions are carried out on the locked vehicle.

- Opening the bonnet.
- Opening the boot lid.
- Opening the doors.
- Manipulation of the ignition lock.
- Towing the vehicle » page 55.
- Movement in the vehicle » page 55.
- Sudden and significant voltage failure of the electrical system.
- Uncoupling the trailer » page 133, *Trailer, connect and disconnect*.

If the driver's door of a vehicle with a remote control is unlocked and opened by the lock cylinder, then the alarm is triggered.

Switching off the alarm
The alarm is turned off by pressing the button on the radio remote control key or switching on the ignition.

CAUTION
Before leaving the vehicle, check that the doors and windows are closed in order to ensure that the alarm system is fully operational.

Note
The working life of the alarm siren is 5 years.

Activating/deactivating

Read and observe ! on page 54 first.

Activating
The alarm system is activated automatically approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked.

If the vehicle is unlocked and a door or the boot lid not opened within the next 45 seconds, the vehicle will lock again automatically and the SafeLock system or anti-theft alarm system will be switched back on. This function is intended to prevent the car being unlocked unintentionally.

Deactivating
The alarm system is deactivated automatically after the vehicle is unlocked. If the vehicle is not opened within 45 seconds, the alarm system is automatically activated again.

The alarm system is also deactivated if you unlock the driver door using the key within 45 seconds of locking the vehicle.

Interior monitor and towing protection



Fig. 40
Button for interior monitor and towing protection

Read and observe ! on page 54 first.

The interior monitor detects movements inside the car and then triggers the alarm.

The tow-away protection triggers the alarm if a vehicle is registered as being on an inclination.

Activating
The interior monitor and the towing protection are activated automatically after the vehicle is locked.

Deactivating
› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the driver door.
› Press the symbol button OFF » Fig. 40 on the B column on the driver's side.

The illumination of the symbol OFF in the button changes from red to orange.

› Lock the vehicle within 30 seconds.

Deactivate the interior monitor and the towing protection if there is a possibility of the alarm being triggered by movements (e.g. by children or animals) within the vehicle interior or if the vehicle has to be transported (e.g. by train or ship) or towed.

! CAUTION
- The opened glasses storage compartment reduces the effectiveness of the interior monitor. To ensure the full functionality of the interior monitor, the glasses storage compartment must always be closed before locking the vehicle.
- The anti-theft alarm system is activated when the vehicle is locked, even if the SafeLock system is deactivated. The interior monitor is however not activated.

Tailgate

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening/closing 56
Automatic locking of the boot lid 56

! WARNING
- Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the boot lid. Otherwise, the lid might open suddenly while the vehicle is moving, even if the lid was locked – risk of accident!
- Never drive with the tailgate fully opened or slightly ajar otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning.
- Do not press on the rear window when closing the tailgate, as otherwise this could crack – risk of injury.
- Make sure that when closing the boot lid, no body parts are crushed - there is danger of injury!

i Note
The function of the button in the grip above the licence plate is deactivated when starting off or at a speed of 5 km/hour or more for vehicles with central locking. The function is restored after the vehicle stops and the door is opened.

Opening/closing



Fig. 41 **Opening / closing tailgate**

Read and observe ! on page 55 first.

After unlocking the vehicle, the boot lid can be opened with the button in the handle above the number plate.

Opening / closing tailgate » Fig. 41

1 Unlocking the door
2 Open flap
3 Closing the flap (by pulling the handle)

CAUTION

On vehicles with a variable loading floor, this must not be affixed by means of the hook on the frame of the boot lid when closing the boot lid » page 90 - there is the risk of damage to the hook.

Automatic locking of the boot lid

Read and observe ! on page 55 first.

If the boot lid is unlocked with the key symbol on the remote control key, then the door is automatically locked after closing.

The period after which the boot lid is locked automatically can be extended by a specialist garage.

After the activation of the delayed locking, the door can be opened again after closing within a limited period.

Delayed locking can be deactivated by a specialist garage at any time.

CAUTION

There is a risk of unwanted entry into the vehicle before the boot lid is locked automatically. We therefore recommend locking the vehicle with the key symbol on the remote control key.

Window operations

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Mechanical window lefter 57
Electric WindowsElectric Windows 57
Opening the windows in the front passenger door and in the rear doors 58
Force limitation 58
Operational faults 59

The window can be operated mechanically by the winder attached to the respective door panel.

Depending on equipment the windows can be operated electrically from the following locations; the window in the front doors or all windows from the driver's seat and also via the buttons for the windows in the passenger door or the rear doors.

WARNING

The windows should be closed carefully – risk of injury!

CAUTION

- In the event that the windows are frozen, first of all eliminate the ice » page 142, *Windows and external mirrors* and only then operate the electrical power windows. Otherwise, the window sealing and the electrical power window mechanism could be damaged.
- Always make sure that the windows are closed when you leave the locked vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

At high speeds you should keep the windows closed to prevent unnecessarily high fuel consumption.

Note

When driving always use the existing heater, air conditioning and ventilation system for ventilating the interior of the vehicle. If the windows are opened, dust as well as other dirt can get into the vehicle and in addition the wind noise is more at certain speeds.

Mechanical window lefter

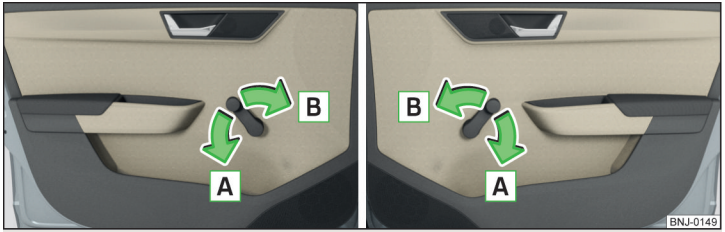


Fig. 42 **Window operation: left / right**

Read and observe and on page 56 first.

Using the respective window crank only one window can be operated mechanically.

Opening

Turn the winder in the direction of arrow A » Fig. 42.

Closing

Turn the winder in the direction of the arrow B» Fig. 42.

Electric WindowsElectric Windows

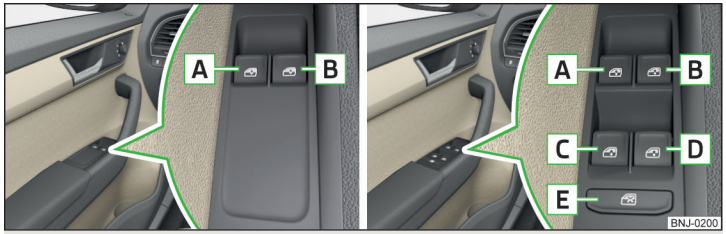


Fig. 43 **Buttons for window-openers: Version 1 / version 2**

Read and observe and on page 56 first.

The electrical power windows can only be operated when the ignition is switched on.

Depending on the equipment configuration, the front windows - **Variant 1** or the front and rear windows - **Variant 2** be operated with the door buttons » Fig. 43.

Buttons for window levers

A Front door left
B Front door right
C Rear door, left
D Rear door, right
E Disable / enable the buttons in the rear doors

Opening

› Lightly press the appropriate button down and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.

Releasing the button causes the window to stop immediately.

In **Variant 2** » Fig. 43the**driver's window** can be automatically fully opened by pressing the button briefly until it stops. When pressed again or after withdrawing the button, the window will stop.

Closing

› Pull gently on the top edge of the corresponding button and hold until the window has moved into the desired position.

Releasing the button causes the window to stop immediately.

In **Variant 2** » Fig. 43the **driver's window** can be automatically closed completely by drawing the button to the stop. When drawn again or after pressing the button, the window will stop.

Disable / enable the buttons in the rear doors

› Press the button E » Fig. 43.

When the buttons are disabled in the rear doors, the indicator light in the button E lights up.

WARNING

Power windows in the driver's door and the rear doors are equipped with a force limiter (only applies to the **Variant 2**) » page 58. If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres. The windows should nevertheless be closed carefully – risk of injury.

- If the rear seats are accommodating people who are not completely independent, e.g. children, it is recommended that for safety reasons the buttons in the rear doors are disabled with the button E » Fig. 43.

CAUTION

- Keep the windows clean to ensure the correct functionality of the electric windows.
- In the winter, ice on the window may cause greater resistance as the window is closed. The window will stop and open again by several centimetres.
- It is necessary to deactivate the force limiter to close the window » page 58.
- Always close the sliding/tilting roof before disconnecting the battery.

Note

The window lift mechanism is equipped with protection against overheater. Repeated opening and closing of the window can cause this mechanism to overheat. If this happens, it will not be possible to operate the window for a short time. You will be able to operate the window again as soon as the overheater protection has cooled down.

Opening the windows in the front passenger door and in the rear doors

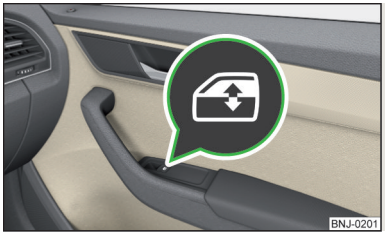


Fig. 44
Window winder button

Read and observe and on page 56 first.

There is a button in the front passenger door and in the rear doors for that window.

Opening

› Lightly press the appropriate button down and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.

Releasing the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Closing

› Pull gently on the top edge of the corresponding button and hold until the window has moved into the desired position.

Releasing the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Force limitation

Only version 2 of the power windows is equipped with the power limiter (does not apply to the passenger window).

Read and observe and on page 56 first.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If the obstacle prevents the window from being closed during the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted once again and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If you attempt to close the window again within 10 seconds of the window being moved down for the second time, even though the obstacle was not yet been removed, the closing process is only stopped. During this time it is not possible to automatically close the window. The force limiter is still switched on.

The force limiter is only switched off if you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds - **the window will now close with full force!**

If you wait longer than 10 seconds, the force limiter is switched on again.

WARNING

- **Variant 1** of the power window » Fig. 43 *on page 57* **has no** force limiter. The windows should be closed carefully – risk of injury.
- The **passenger window in variant 2** of the power window » Fig. 43 *on page 57* **has no** force limiter. The window should nevertheless be closed carefully – risk of injury!

Operational faults

Read and observe ! and ! on page 56 first.

The electric window levers do not work if the vehicle battery has been disconnected and connected again while a window was open. The system must be activated.

Activation sequence:

› Switch on the ignition.
› Pull the top edge of the button and close the window.
› Release the button.
› Pull the relevant button upwards again for approx. 1 seconds, and keep it pressed down.

Lights and visibility

Lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operating the lights 60
Daylight running lights (DAY LIGHT) 60
Turn signal and main beam 61
Automatic driving lamp control 61
Fog lights 62
Fog lights with the CORNER function 62
Rear fog light 62
COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME 63
Hazard warning light system 63
Parking lights 63
Driving abroad 64

The lights work only with the ignition on, unless otherwise stated.

The layout of the controls on right-hand drive vehicles differs partially from that shown in » Fig. 45 *on page 60*. The symbols which mark the positions of the controls are identical.

Keep the headlights lenses clean » page 143, *Headlight glasses*.

WARNING

- The activation of the lights should only be undertaken in accordance with national legal requirements.
- The automatic driving lamp control **AUTO** only operates as a support and does not release the driver from his responsibility to check the lights and, if necessary, to switch on the light depending on the prevailing light conditions.

Note

▪ The headlights may mist up temporarily. When the driving lights are switched on, the light outlet areas are free from condensation after a short time, although the headlight lenses may still be misted up around the edge. This mist has no influence on the life of the lighting system.
▪ The instruments are also illuminated when the parking light, low or high beam light is switched on. The brightness of the instrument illumination is set automatically depending on the ambient lighting throughout. The complete brightness of the instrument lighting can be set in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - Vehicle settings*.

Operating the lights

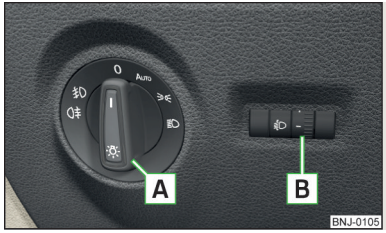


Fig. 45
Light switch and control dial for headlight range adjustment

Read and observe ! on page 59 first.

Switching lights on and off
Depending on the equipment configuration, the light switch A » Fig. 45 can be turned to one of the following positions.

0 Switching off lights (except daytime running lights)
AUTO Automatic switching of lights on and off » page 61
Switching on the parking light or parking light » page 63
Switch on low beam

Headlight range control
Turning the rotary switch B from position **-** to **3** gradually activates the headlight beam control, thereby shortening the beam of light.

The positions of the width of illumination correspond approximately to the following car load.

– Front seats occupied, boot empty
1 All seats occupied, boot empty
2 All seats occupied, boot loaded
3 Driver seat occupied, boot loaded

WARNING
Always set the headlight range control so that other road users are not dazzled, in particular oncoming vehicles.

Note

▪ The light switch is in position or **AUTO** and the ignition is turned off, the low beam is switched off automatically [1] and the status light is lit. The side light is switched off when the ignition key is removed, for vehicles with the start button after switching off the ignition and opening the driver's door.
▪ If there is a fault in the light switch, the low beam comes on automatically.

Daylight running lights (DAY LIGHT)

Read and observe ! on page 59 first.

The daytime running lights (the only function) provides the lighting of the front vehicle range.

The lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.
✓ The light switch is in the position **0** or **AUTO**.
✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The parking aid is activated.

Activating/deactivating function on vehicles with Infotainment
The function can be disabled/enabled in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

Deactivating on vehicles without Infotainment
› Switch off the ignition.
› Pull the indicator / main beam lever towards the steering wheel, push down and hold in this position.
› Switch on the ignition.

[1] Does not apply to the position **AUTO**, as long as the conditions are met for the COMING HOME function » page 63.

› Hold the operating lever in this position for at least 3 seconds after switching the ignition on.

The deactivation of the function is confirmed by an audible signal.

Activating on vehicles without Infotainment

› Switch off the ignition.
› Pull the indicator / main beam lever towards the steering wheel, push up and hold in this position.
› Switch on the ignition.
› Hold the operating lever in this position for at least 3 seconds after switching the ignition on.

The activation of the function is confirmed by an audible signal.

! WARNING

When the daytime running light is switched on, the parking lights (neither at the front nor the rear) and the number plate lights are not lit. Therefore always switch on the low beam when the visibility is poor.

Turn signal and main beam

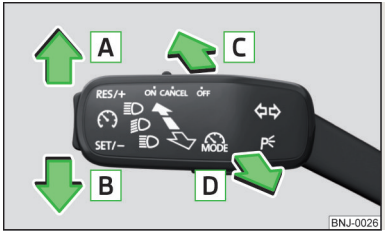


Fig. 46
Operating lever: Turn signal and main beam operation

Read and observe ! on page 59 first.

Lever positions » Fig. 46

A When the right turn signal light is switched on, the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster ➡

B When the left turn signal light is switched on, the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster ⬅

C Switch on main beam (spring setting) - the warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster

D Switching off main beam / switching on headlamp flasher (spring-loaded position)

The **main beam** can only be switched on when the low beam lights are on.

The **headlight flasher** can be operated even if the ignition is switched off.

The **turn signal light** switches itself off automatically when driving around a curve or after making a turn.

"Convenience turn signal"
When the control lever is lightly pressed to the pressure point A or B then the respective turn-signal lamp flashes three times.

If during the "comfort flashing" the operating lever in the opposite side is pressed, then the blinking stops.

The "Lane change flash" can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

! WARNING

Only turn on the main beam or the headlight flasher if other road users will not be dazzled.

Automatic driving lamp control



Fig. 47
Light switch: AUTO position

Read and observe ! on page 59 first.

The light switch is in position **AUTO** » Fig. 47 then depending on the equipment the automatic switch on / off the lights corresponding to the light or weather conditions (rain) takes place.

The sensitivity of the sensor for the determination of the ambient light can be adjusted in the infotainment » *Operating instructions Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

If the light switch is in position **AUTO**, the lettering **AUTO** illuminates next to the light switch. If the light is switched on automatically, the symbol next to the light switch also lights up.

Automatic driving-light control during rain
The dipped beam is switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

✓ The parking aid is activated.
✓ The light switch is in the position **AUTO**.
✓ The windscreen wipers are on for more than 30 s.

The light turns off about 4 minutes after turning off the wipers.

Automatic headlight control in rain can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - Vehicle settings*.

CAUTION
Poorer visibility is detected by a sensor mounted below the windscreen in the holder of the inside mirror or in the control panel. Do not attach any stickers or similar objects in front of the sensor in order to avoid impairing the function or its reliability.

Fog lights

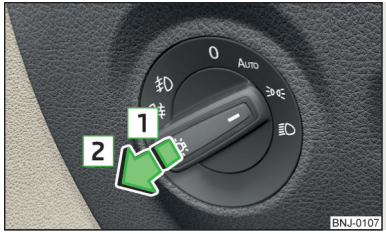


Fig. 48
Light switch: Turn on front and rear fog light

Read and observe ! on page 59 first.

Switching on/off
› Turn the light switch to position , **AUTO** or » Fig. 48.
› Pull the light switch to position 1.

The warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster.

Switching off takes place in reverse order.

Fog lights with the CORNER function

Read and observe ! on page 59 first.

The function CORNER provides better illumination of the nearby environment when turning, manoeuvring or anything similar.

The function automatically switches on the fog lights on each side of the vehicle, if the following conditions are met.

✓ The turn signal is switched on or the front wheels are turned sharply [1].
✓ The vehicle speed is below 40 km/h.
✓ The low beam is switched on.
✓ The fog lights are not switched on.

Note
The two fog lights are switched on when you shift into the reverse gear.

Rear fog light

Read and observe ! on page 59 first.

Switching on/off
› Turn the light switch to position , **AUTO** or » Fig. 48 *on page 62*.
› Pull the light switch to position 2.

The warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster.

Switching off takes place in reverse order.

If the vehicle is not fitted with fog lights, the rear fog light is switched on by pulling out the light switch directly to the only possible setting.

[1] If both switch-on conditions are conflicting, for example, if the front wheels are turned to the left and the right turn signal light is switched on, the turn signal light has the higher priority.

Note

While driving with an accessory connected to the trailer socket (e.g. trailer, bike carrier) only the equipment is illuminated by the fog light. The towing device must be installed at the factory or from the ŠKODA original accessories.

COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME

Read and observe ! on page 59 first.

The function COMING HOME ensures that the vehicle's environment is illuminated after switching off the ignition and opening the driver's door.

The function LEAVING HOME ensures that the vehicle's environment is illuminated after unlocking the vehicle with the radio remote control unit.

The function switches the light on only if there is poorer visibility and the light switch is in the position **AUTO**.

Enabling / disabling and setting functions

The functions and setting of the lighting duration can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment system » *Operating instructions Infotainment*, chapter *CARVehicle settings*.

CAUTION

- Poorer visibility is detected by a sensor mounted below the windscreen in the holder of the inside mirror or in the control panel. Do not attach any stickers or similar objects in front of the sensor in order to avoid impairing the function or its reliability.
- If this option is always enabled, then the battery is heavily loaded.

Hazard warning light system



Fig. 49
Hazard warning light system button

Read and observe ! on page 59 first.

The hazard warning lights make other road users aware of your vehicle.

The function switches on all indicators.

Switching on/off

› Press the button ⚠ » Fig. 49.

When you turn it on the warning light ⚠ flashes in the button and at the same time the warning lights ⇔ in the instrument cluster.

The hazard warning light system can also be operated if the ignition is switched off.

The hazard warning light system will switch on automatically if one of the airbags is deployed.

When the hazard warning system is on and the indicator light is switched on (e.g. when turning), the hazard warning lights are switched off temporarily and only the turn signal flashes on the relevant side of the vehicle.

Parking lights

Read and observe ! on page 59 first.

The side light is provided for lighting of the parked vehicle.

Switching on the side light on one side

› Switch off the ignition.
› Press the control lever to position A or B as far as the stop » Fig. 46 *on page 61*.

The parking lights on the right or left side of the vehicle are turned on.

Switching on the parking lights on both sides

› With the ignition switched on turn the light switch to position .
› Switch off the ignition.
› Lock the vehicle.

After pulling out the ignition key and opening the driver's door, an audible warning sounds.

After a few seconds or after closing the driver's door, the audible alarm is turned off, but the parking lights will remain switched on.

CAUTION

- Turning on the parking light means the battery is heavily loaded.
- The parking light cannot be turned off automatic due to the low battery charge level.
- If the two-sided parking lights are switched on when the ignition is off, then there is no automatic switching off of the parking light.

Driving abroad

Read and observe ! on page 59 first.

When driving in countries with opposing traffic system (traffic on the left/right), your headlights may dazzle oncoming traffic. To prevent oncoming traffic from being dazzled, the headlights must be adjusted by a specialist garage.

Interior lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front interior light ____ 64
Rear interior light ____ 65

The inner lighting also works if the ignition is switched off.

The light turns off automatically 10 minutes after switching off the ignition or opening a door unless otherwise specified.

Front interior light

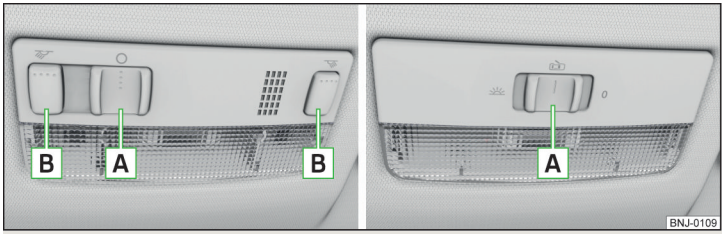


Fig. 50 **Operation of the front light: Version 1 / version 2**

Positions of the sliding light switch A » Fig. 50

- Switching on
- **0** Switching off
- Automatic operation

Switch for turning on / off the reading lights B » Fig. 50

- Reading lamp left
- Reading lamp right

Automatic operation of the lamp - position

The system is **turned on** when any of the following is present.

- The vehicle is unlocked.
- One of the doors is opened.
- The ignition key is removed.

The system is **turned off** when any of the following is present.

- The vehicle is locked.
- The ignition is switched on.
- About 30 seconds after all the doors have been closed.

Rear interior light

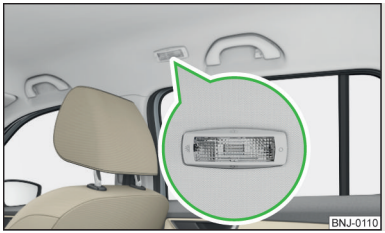


Fig. 51
Interior lights at the rear

Positions of the lens of the rear light » Fig. 51

- Switching on
- Automatic operation (centre position) [1]
- Switching off

Visibility

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Rear window heater 65
Sun visors in the front 66
Sun screen of the panoramic roof 66

WARNING

Make sure that the view outside is not covered by ice, snow, mist or other objects.

Rear window heater

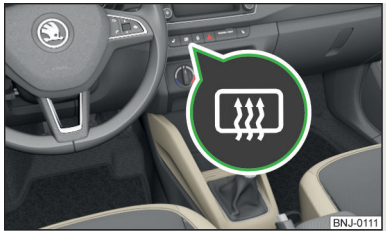


Fig. 52
Button for rear window heater

Read and observe ! on page 65 first.

The heater for quick defrosting and ventilation of the rear window.

The heating can be activated with the ignition on.

The heating is turned on after the engine has started.

Button for the heating in the centre console » Fig. 52

- Activate/deactivate the heated rear window

When the heater is activated, a lamp lights up inside the button.

The heater automatically switches off after approximately 10 minutes.

If the engine is switched off when the heating is on and turned back on again within 10 minutes, the heating is continued.

Note

If the on-board voltage decreases, the heating switches off automatically » page 159, *Automatic load deactivation*.

[1] In this position, apply the same rules to the rear interior light as for the front interior light » page 64.

Sun visors in the front

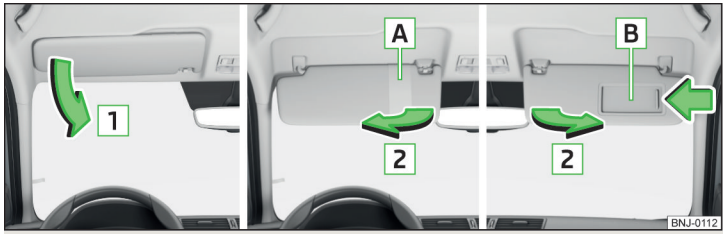


Fig. 53 **Fold down visor / flip up visor / make-up mirror and parking permit holder**

Read and observe ! on page 65 first.

Operation and description of the sun shade » Fig. 53

1 Fold down the cover
2 Swivel cover towards the door
A Parking ticket band
B Make-up mirror with cover (the cover can be pushed in the direction of the arrow)

! WARNING

When objects are attached to the sun visor, the visor can not be pivoted to the side windows. This might result in injuries to the occupants if the head airbag is deployed.

i Note

A vanity mirror can be installed in either the driver's or the front passenger's sun visor.

Sun screen of the panoramic roof



Fig. 54
Open sun screen

Read and observe ! on page 65 first.

The sunshade of the panoramic roof can be **opened** manually in the direction of arrow or **closed** in the opposite direction of the arrow » Fig. 54.

! WARNING

When operating the sun blind, proceed with caution to avoid causing crushing injuries – risk of injury!

Windscreen wipers and washers

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Windscreen wipers and washers 67
Headlight cleaning system 68

The windscreen wipers only operate if the ignition is switched on and the bonnet is closed.

Winter setting of the windscreen wiper

If the windscreen wipers are in rest position, they cannot be folded out from the windscreen. For this reason we recommend adjusting the windscreen wipers in winter so that they can be folded out from the windscreen easily.

› Switch on the windscreen wipers.
› Switch off the ignition.

The windscreen wipers remain in the position in which they were when switching off the ignition.

The service position can also be used as a winter position » page 180, *Replacing the windscreen wiper blades*.

WARNING

- Properly maintained windscreen wiper blades are essential for clear visibility and safe driving » page 179, *Replacing windscreen wiper blades*.
- Do not use the windscreen washer system at low temperatures without heating the windscreen beforehand. The window washer fluid could otherwise freeze on the windscreen and restrict the view to the front.

CAUTION

- In cold temperatures and during the winter, check before switching on the ignition that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windscreen. If the windscreen wipers are switched on when the blades are frozen to the windscreen, this may damage both the blades and windscreen wiper motor!
- Carefully release frozen wiper blades off the windscreen.
- Remove snow and ice from the windscreen wipers before driving.
- If the windscreen wipers are handled carelessly, there is a risk of damage to the windscreen.
- Do not switch on the ignition if the front wiper arms are retracted. The wiper arms could damage the paint of the bonnet.

Note

The windscreen washer nozzles of the windscreen are heated automatically after starting the engine.

Windscreen wipers and washers

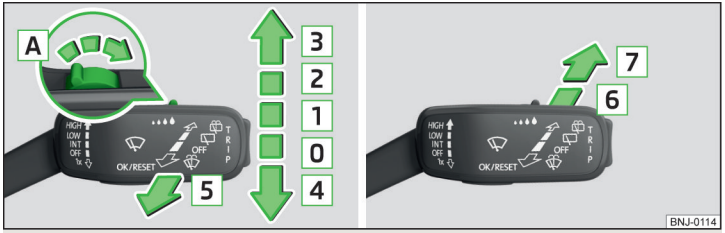


Fig. 55 **Operation of the windscreen wipers and washer: Front/rear**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 67 first.

Lever positions

0 **OFF** Wipers off

1 **INT** Depending on equipment fitted:
- Periodic windscreen wiping
- Automatic windscreen wiping in rain

2 **LOW** Slow windscreen wiping

3 **HIGH** Rapid windscreen wiping

4 **1x** Flick windscreen wiping, service position of the wiper arms (spring-loaded position)

5 Spraying and wiping the windscreen (sprung position)

6 Wiping the rear window pane

7 Spraying and wiping the rear window (sprung position)

A Depending on equipment fitted:
- To set the wiper interval for the windscreen
- Sensitivity setting of the automatic wiping with rain

By setting the switch in the direction of the arrow wipers sweep more often.

Spraying and wiping the windshield

After releasing the operating lever, the wipers will make from 1 to 3 wiper strokes.

Spraying and wiping the rear window

After releasing the operating lever, the wipers will make from 2 to 3 wiper strokes.

The operating lever remains in position 6.

Activating / deactivating of the automatic windscreen wiping with rain

Automatic windscreen wiping in rain can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - Vehicle settings*.

WARNING

Automatic wiping during rain is only a support. The driver is still responsible for setting the function of the windscreen wipers manually depending on the visibility conditions.

Note

▪ If the operating lever is in the position 2 or 3 and the speed of the vehicle drops below 4 km / h, the wiping speed is reduced. The original wiping speed is restored step by step when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 8 km/h.
▪ The rear window is wiped once automatically if the windscreen wipers are on when reverse gear is selected. The function can be enabled or disabled in the Infotainment» *Operating instructions Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

Headlight cleaning system

Read and observe ! and ! on page 67 first.

To clean the headlights, the headlamp is also sprayed after every ten squirts.

The headlight washer system works under the following conditions.

✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The low beam is switched on.
✓ The outside temperature is about -12° C to +39° C.

To ensure the correct functioning of the system, even in winter, this needs to be regularly cleared of snow and ice, e.g. free with a de-icing spray.

Rear mirror

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Interior mirror dimming ____ 68
Exterior mirrors ____ 69

WARNING

▪ Convex (curved outward) or aspherical exterior mirrors increase the field of vision. They do, however, make objects appear smaller in the mirror. These mirrors are therefore only of limited use for estimating distances to the following vehicles.
▪ Whenever possible use the interior mirror for estimating the distances to the following vehicles.

Interior mirror dimming

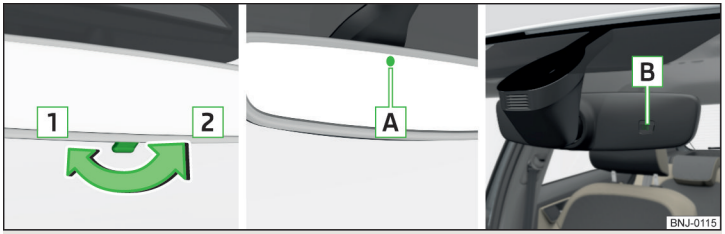


Fig. 56 **Interior mirror: manual dimming / auto-dimming / light sensor**

Read and observe ! on page 68 first.

Mirrors with manual dimming » Fig. 56
1 Basic position of the mirror
2 Mirror dimming

Mirror with automatic dimming » Fig. 56
A Light sensor
B Light sensor on the back of the mirror

Mirror with automatic dimming
When the engine is switched off the mirror dims automatically depending on the light falling on the sensors.

When the interior lights are switched on or the reverse gear is engaged, the mirror always moves back into the basic position (not dimmed).

Do not attach external devices (e.g. navigation systems) on to the windscreen or in the vicinity of the interior mirror » !.

WARNING

▪ The illuminated display of an external navigation device can lead to operational faults to the automatic dimming interior mirror – risk of accident.
▪ Automatic mirror dimming operates only properly if the light striking the sensors is not affected by other objects.

WARNING

The mirrors with automatic dimming contain an electrolyte liquid which can escape if mirror glass is broken.

- The leaking electrolytic fluid can irritate the skin, eyes and respiratory system.
- If your eyes or skin come into contact with the electrolytic fluid, immediately wash the affected area for several minutes plenty of water. If necessary get medical assistance.

Exterior mirrors

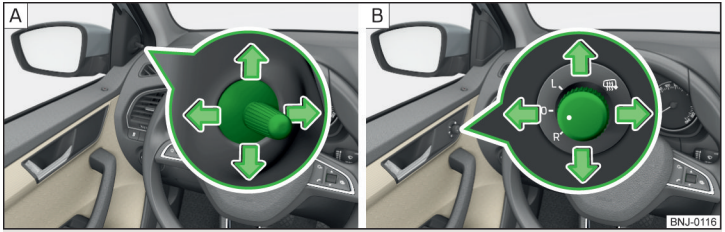


Fig. 57 **Exterior mirror operation: mechanical / electrical**

Read and observe ! on page 68 first.

Adjust the position

The mirror can be adjusted to the desired position by moving the knob in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 57.

The movement of the mirror surface follows the movement of the rotary knob.

Electrically-adjustable mirrors

The knob can be moved (depending on vehicle equipment) into the following positions » Fig. 57 - B.

- **L** Adjust the left mirror
- **R** Adjust the right mirror
- **0** Switch off mirror control
- Mirror heater

The **mirror heating** only works when the engine is running.

Folding in the exterior mirrors

The whole exterior mirror can be manually folded towards the side windows. To restore it to its original position, fold back from the side window until it audibly clicks into place.

WARNING

Do not touch the exterior mirror surfaces if the exterior mirror heater is switched on - risk of burns.

Note

If the electrical mirror setting fails at any time, the mirrors can be adjusted by hand by pressing on the edge of the mirror surface.

Seats and headrests

Seats and headrests

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Adjusting the front seats ____ 70
Headrests - adjusting height ____ 70
Headrests - removing and installing ____ 71

WARNING

- Only adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident.
- Caution when adjusting the seat! You may suffer crushing injuries as a result of adjusting the seat without paying proper attention.
- Do not transport any objects on the front passenger seat other than objects intended for this purpose (e.g. child safety seat) – risk of accident.

Note

After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism for the backrest angle.

Adjusting the front seats

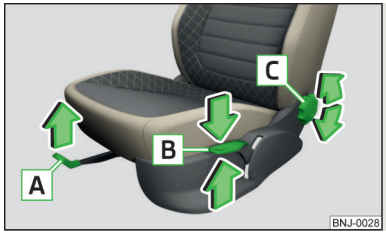


Fig. 58
Control elements on the seat

Read and observe ! on page 70 first.

Control elements on the seat » Fig. 58

A Adjusting a seat fore and aft
B Adjusting height of seat
C Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest

Adjusting a seat fore and aft

› Pull the lever A » Fig. 58 in the direction of the arrow and push the seat in the required direction.

The lock must click into place after you release the lever.

Adjusting height of seat

› Again push or pull the lever B » Fig. 58 in the direction of one of the arrows.

Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest

› Release the seat back (do not lean on).
› Turn the dial C » Fig. 58 in the direction of one of the arrows.

Headrests - adjusting height

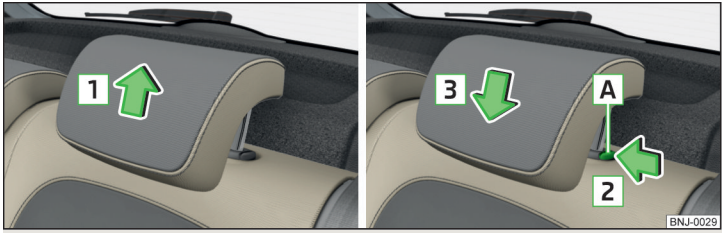


Fig. 59 **Head restraints: Move up / move down**

Read and observe ! on page 70 first.

Adjustment of the head rest heights is the same in the front and rear.

Best protection is achieved if the top edge of the head rest is at the same level as the upper part of your head.

Shift upwards

› Push the headrest in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 59.

Move down

› Press the locking button A in the direction of the arrow 2 and hold » Fig. 59.
› Push the headrest in the direction of arrow 3 .

WARNING

With seats occupied, the respective head rests must be correctly set (may not be in the bottom position) - there is a risk of fatal injury!

Note

- The middle rear headrest is only adjustable in two positions.
- For the sports seats, the headrests are integrated into the front seat backrests. This headrest cannot be adjusted in height.

Headrests - removing and installing

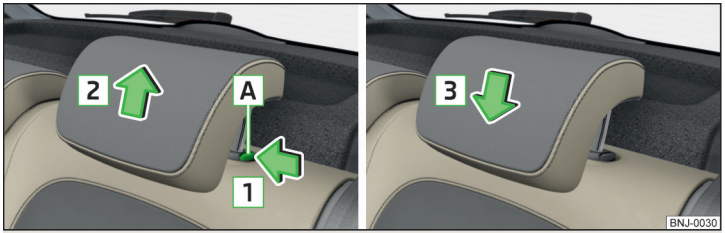


Fig. 60 **Head restraints: Removing / installing**

Read and observe ! on page 70 first.

The removal and installation of headrests is the same in the front and rear.

Before removal and installation of the headrests, fold the respective seat backrest forward slightly.

› Pull the headrest out of the seat backrest as far as the stop.
› Press the locking button A in the direction of arrow 1, and pull out the headrest in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 60.
› To re-insert the headrest, push it far enough down in the direction of arrow 3 into the seat backrest until the locking button clicks into place.

WARNING

With seats occupied, the respective head rests must be installed and adjusted correctly - there is a risk of fatal injury!

Note

For the sports seats, the headrests are integrated into the front seat backrests. These headrests cannot be removed.

Seat features

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front seat heater 71
Armrest 72
Seat backrests 72
Rear seat 73

Front seat heater



Fig. 61
Buttons for front seat heater

The seat backrests and seats can be heated electrically.

The heat output can be adjusted with the ignition on.

The heater is turned on after the engine has started.

Buttons for the seat heater » Fig. 61

Left seat heating
Right seat heating

Switching on

› Press the corresponding symbol button or » Fig. 61.

Pressing once switches the seat heater on at its maximum level - Level 2.

Press repeatedly to reduce the intensity of the heater until it is switched off.

The level of the seat heater is indicated by the number of illuminated warning lights in the switch.

WARNING

If you or a passenger suffer from limited perception of pain and/or temperature, e.g. through medication, injury or chronic illness (e.g. diabetes), we recommend you do not use seat heater on the driver or front passenger seat. This can lead to burns on the back, the posterior and the legs which are difficult to heal. If the seat heater is used, we recommend to make regular breaks in your journey when driving long distances, so that the body can recuperate from the stress of the journey. Please consult your doctor, who can evaluate your specific condition.

CAUTION

- Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply concentrated pressure to them.
- The seat heater in the following cases will not turn on - there is a risk of damaging the seat covers and seat heater.
  - The seats are not occupied.
  - Items are fastened to or stored on the seats e.g. child seat, bags etc.
  - Additional seat covers or protective covers are fixed to the seats.
- Clean the seat covers » page 146.

Note

- If the heaters for the rear seats are set to their highest intensity - level 2, they are automatically switched down to level 1 after 15 minutes.
- If the on-board voltage drops, the heater switches off automatically in order to provide sufficient electrical power for the engine control » page 159, *Automatic load deactivation*.

Armrest



Fig. 62
Adjusting armrest

Setting the height

› Lift the armrest fully upwards in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 62 and then move it back down completely.
› Move the armrest into one of the 5 locking positions.

The armrest includes a storage compartment » page 79.

Seat backrests

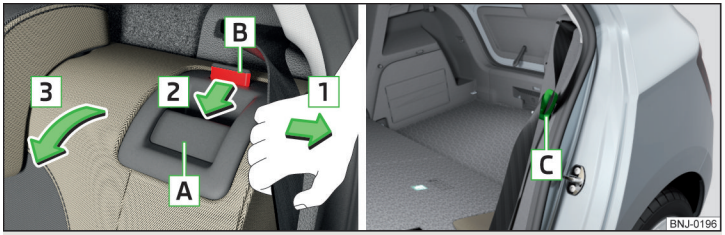


Fig. 63 **Fold seat backrest forwards / standby position of the seat belt**

The luggage compartment can be increased in size by folding the seat backrests forward. The seat backrests can also be folded forward individually on vehicles with divided rear seats.

Before folding the seat backrests forwards, adjust the position of the front seats in such a way that they are not damaged by the folded seat backrests.

Folding the seat backrest forwards

› Push the head rest into the seat backrest until it clicks into position.

› Pull the outer seat belt to the side panel in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 63.
› Press the release lever A in the direction of arrow 2.
› Fold the backrest in the direction of the arrow 3.

In the **undivided** seat back, press the release handles on both sides of the seat back at the same time.

Folding the seat backrest back into position

› Pull the outer seat belt to the side panel in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 63.
› Then push the seat backrest back into the upright position until the securing knob A clicks into place – check by pulling on the seat backrest » !.
› Make sure that the red pin B is hidden.

In the **undivided** seat back, pull the two outer belts to the side panel. The release handles A must be locked audibly on both sides of the seat backrest. The red pen B should not be visible on any of the two sides of the seat back.

! WARNING

- The seat belts and the belt locks must be in their original position after folding back the seat backrests – they must be ready to use.
- The seat backrests must be securely latched in position so that no objects from the luggage compartment can slip into the passenger compartment under sudden braking – risk of injury.
- In occupied rear seats make sure that the respective seat backrests are properly engaged.

! CAUTION

Ensure that the seat belts are not damaged when operating the seat backrests. Under no circumstances must the seat belts be jammed by the folded back seat backrests.

i Note

The buckle latch of the outer seat belts C » Fig. 63 can be inserted into the side panel.

Rear seat

Applies to the Fabia Estate

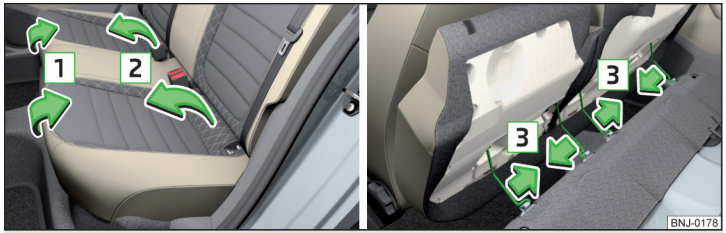


Fig. 64 **Fold rear seat forward / remove split rear bench seat**

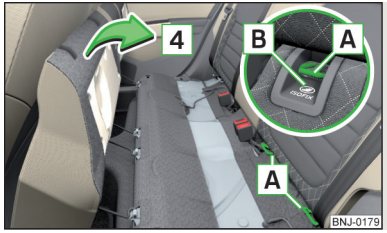


Fig. 65
Fold the rear seat back

The luggage space can be increased by folding the rear seat forward and removing it.

For vehicles with split rear seats, the parts of the rear seat can be folded forward individually and removed.

Folding forward

› Fold the rear seat in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 64.
› Fold the rear seat in the direction of arrow 2.

Removing

› Fold the rear seat forward.
› Press the wire clips in the direction of arrow 3 » Fig. 64, so that they become detached from the holders.
› Remove the rear seat.

Inserting

› Insert the wire clips in the direction of arrow 3 » Fig. 64 and insert into the brackets.

Folding backwards

› Fold the backrest in the direction of the arrow 4 » Fig. 65.
› Place the rear seat on the eyelets A, so that the eyelets A engage in the recesses in the plastic caps for ISOFIX B » !.

! WARNING

The rear seat must not be pulled in under the eyelets A when folding forwards - this would mean the rear seat could not be secured correctly.

! CAUTION

The rear seat must not be pulled in under the eyelets A when being folded back - there is a risk of damaging the rear seat.

Transporting and practical equipment

Useful equipment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Car park ticket holder 75
Storage compartments in the doors 75
Storage compartment on the side of front seat 75
Storage compartment in the front centre console 76
Coin and credit card holder 76
Storage compartment on the dash panel 76
Cup holders 76
Cigarette lighter 77
Ashtray 77
12-volt power outlet 78
Waste container 78
Multimedia holder 79
Storage compartment in the front arm rest 79
Glasses compartment 80
Storage compartment on the front passenger side 80
Storage compartment under the front seat 81
Clothes hook 81
Storage pockets on the front seats 81
Net pockets on the front seat rest 82
Storage compartment in the rear centre console 82
AUX and USB inputs 82

! WARNING

- Do not place anything on the dash panel. These objects might slide or fall down while you are driving (under acceleration or when cornering) and could distract you from the traffic - risk of accident.
- Make sure that no objects from the centre console or from other storage compartments can get into the driver's footwell while you are driving. You would not be able to brake, operate the clutch pedal or accelerate - danger of causing an accident!

WARNING (Continued)

- No objects should be placed in the storage compartments nor in the drinks holders; the vehicle occupants could be endangered if there is sudden braking or the vehicle collides with something.
- Ash, cigarettes, cigars and the like. may only be placed in the ashtray!

Car park ticket holder

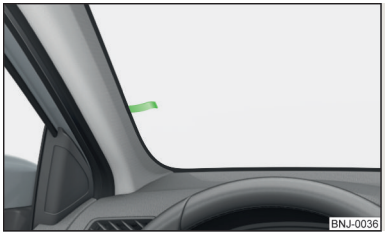


Fig. 66
Parking ticket holder

Read and observe ! on page 74 first.

The parking permit holder » Fig. 66 is designed e.g. for attaching car parking permit.

WARNING

Always **remove** permit/ticket before starting off in order not to restrict the driver's vision.

Storage compartments in the doors

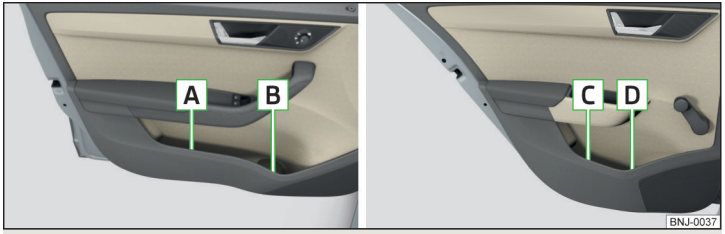


Fig. 67 **Storage compartment: In the front door/in the rear door**

Read and observe ! on page 74 first.

Storage compartments » Fig. 67

A Storage compartment in the front doors
B Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 1.5 liters in the front doors
C Storage compartment in the rear doors
D Bottle compartment, max. capacity 0.5 l in the rear doors

The reflective vest can be stowed in the storage compartments in the door» page 166.

WARNING

Do not use the storage compartment A » Fig. 67 of the door pocket to store protruding objects. Otherwise, this could impair the effectiveness of the side airbag.

Storage compartment on the side of front seat

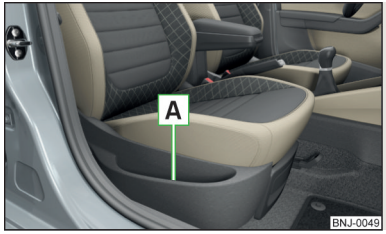


Fig. 68
Storage compartment

Read and observe ! on page 74 first.

The storage compartment A » Fig. 68 is located on the side of the front seat.

Storage compartment in the front centre console



Fig. 69
Storage compartment

Read and observe ! on page 74 first.

The open storage compartment is in the front of the centre console » Fig. 69.

Coin and credit card holder

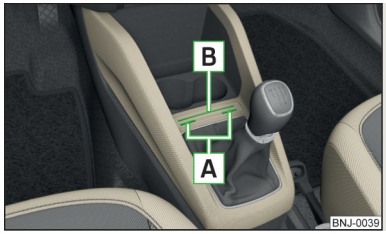


Fig. 70
Coin and credit card holder

Read and observe ! on page 74 first.

Holder in the front centre console » Fig. 70

A For coins
B For credit cards and other cards

Storage compartment on the dash panel



Fig. 71
Storage compartment

Read and observe ! on page 74 first.

The storage compartment is located in the middle part of the panel » Fig. 71.

Cup holders



Fig. 72
Cup holder

Read and observe ! on page 74 first.

Two beverage containers can be placed into the cup holder » Fig. 72.

! WARNING

- Do not use cups or beakers made of brittle material (e.g. glass, porcelain). This could lead to injuries in the event of an accident.
- Never put hot beverage containers in the cup holder. They may spill as the vehicle moves – there is a risk of scalding.
- No objects should be placed in the holders that might endanger the vehicle's occupants if the vehicle brakes suddenly or if the vehicle is in collision.

CAUTION

Do not leave open beverage containers in the cup holder during the journey. There is a risk of spilling e.g. when braking which may cause damage to the electrical components or seat upholstery.

Cigarette lighter



Fig. 73
Cigarette lighter

Read and observe ! on page 74 first.

Use

› Press the igniter in as far as the stop » Fig. 73.
› Wait until the igniter pops out.
› Remove the cigarette lighter immediately and use.
› Place the cigarette lighter back into the socket.

The cigarette lighter also works if the ignition is switched off » !.

WARNING

- When leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle. They could operate the lighter and get burned, start a fire or damage the interior.
- Take care when using the cigarette lighter! Improper usage can cause burns.

Note

The cigarette lighter socket can also be used as a 12 volt socket for electrical appliances.

Ashtray



Fig. 74
Removing ashtray

Read and observe ! on page 74 first.

The ashtray can be used for discarding ash, cigarettes, cigars and the like » !.

Removing/inserting

› Pull out the ashtray in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 74.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

WARNING

Never put flammable objects in the ashtray – risk of fire.

CAUTION

Do not hold the ashtray by the cover when removing it – risk of breaking.

12-volt power outlet

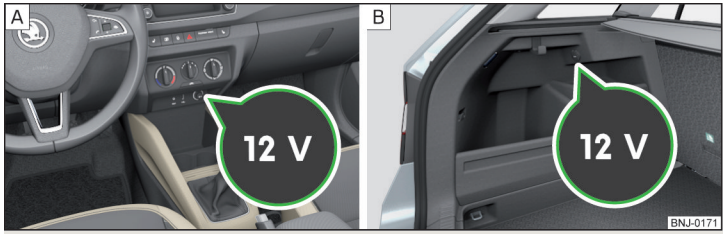


Fig. 75 **Coverage of the 12 volt power outlet: In the central part of the panel / in the luggage compartment**

Read and observe ! on page 74 first.

Overview of the 12-volt power socket » Fig. 75

A In the central part of the dash panel

B In the luggage compartment

Use

› Remove the cover on the power socket » Fig. 75 - A or open the cover on the power socket as appropriate » Fig. 75 - B.

› Connect the plug for the electrical appliance to the socket.

The socket also works if the ignition is switched off » !.

! WARNING

- Improper use of the power sockets and the electrical accessories can cause fires, burns and other serious injuries. Therefore, when leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle.
- If the connected electric device becomes too hot, switch it off and disconnect it from the power supply immediately.

! CAUTION

- The sockets can only be used for the connection of approved electrical accessories with a total power consumption of up to 120 watts, otherwise the electrical system of the vehicle may be damaged.
- Connecting appliances when the engine is not running will drain the battery of the vehicle!
- Only use matching plugs to avoid damaging the power sockets.
- Only use accessories that have been tested for electromagnetic compatibility in accordance with the applicable directives.
- Switch off the devices connected to the power sockets before you switch the ignition on or off and before starting the engine, to avoid damage from voltage fluctuations.

Waste container

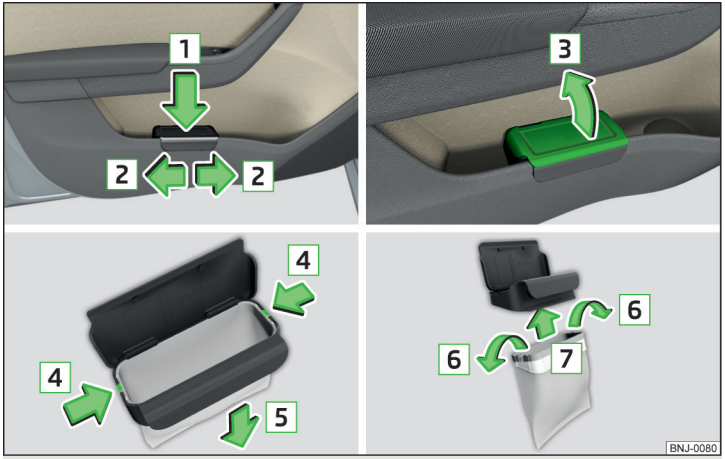


Fig. 76 **Waste container: insert and push / open / replace bag**

Read and observe ! on page 74 first.

The waste container can be inserted into the slot in the door.

Insert waste container

› Position the waste container at the front edge of the slot.

› Push the waste container to the back in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 76.

› Move the waste container in the direction of the arrows as required 2.

Remove the waste container

› Remove the waste container in the opposite direction to the arrow 1 » Fig. 76.

Open / close waste container

› Remove the cover in the direction of arrow 3 » Fig. 76.

Closing takes place in reverse order.

Replace bags

› Remove the waste container from the slot.
› Press the two locking lugs on the frame in the direction of arrow 4 » Fig. 76.
› Pull the bag together with the frame down in the direction of arrow 5.
› Remove the bag from the frame.
› Pull the new bag through the frame and pull it over the frame in the direction of arrow 6.
› Place the bag containing the frame in the direction of arrow 7 into the container body, so that the two lugs engage audibly to the frame.

WARNING

Never use the waste container as an ashtray - risk of fire!

Note

We recommend that you use 20x30 cm bags.

Multimedia holder



Fig. 77
Multimedia holder

Read and observe ! on page 74 first.

You can use this multimedia holder » Fig. 77 to store e.g. a mobile phone, MP3 player or similar devices.

WARNING

Never use the multimedia holder as an ashtray - risk of fire!

Storage compartment in the front arm rest



Fig. 78 **Storage compartment / open storage compartment**

Read and observe ! on page 74 first.

Opening

› Grasp the armrests in the area A » Fig. 78.
› Lift the lid of the storage compartment in the direction of the arrow.

Closing

› Fold the lid of the Storage box back in the opposite direction to the arrow » Fig. 78, until it audibly clicks into place.

WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

Glasses compartment

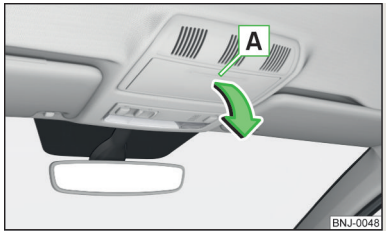


Fig. 79
Opening the glasses storage box

Read and observe ! on page 74 first.

Opening
› Press on the lid of the glasses storage compartment in area A » Fig. 79.

The compartment folds in the direction of the arrow.

Closing
› Swivel the lid of the glasses storage compartment against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 79 until it audibly clicks into place.

The maximum permissible load of the glasses compartment is 250 g.

! WARNING
- The compartment must only be opened when removing or inserting glasses, and otherwise must be kept closed – risk of injury.
- The open compartment restricts the driver's view - risk of accidents!

! CAUTION
- Do not put any heat-sensitive objects in the glasses storage box - with high temperatures there is risk of damage.
- The box must be closed before leaving and locking the vehicle - risk of impairment to the functions of the anti-theft alarm system!

Storage compartment on the front passenger side

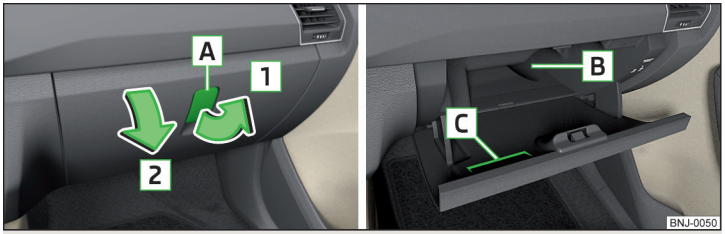


Fig. 80 **Open storage compartment / interior of the storage compartment**

Read and observe ! on page 74 first.

Storage compartment » Fig. 80
A Opening lever
B Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 1 l
C Card holder

Opening
› Pull the handle A to position 1 » Fig. 80 in the direction of the arrow.

The cover folds in the arrow direction 2.

Closing
› Screw in the filler cap in the opposite direction of the arrow 2 » Fig. 80 until it audibly clicks into place.

! WARNING
The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

i Note
In some vehicles, the storage compartment is equipped with a lamp that lights up when you open the storage compartment and goes off when you close it.

Storage compartment under the front seat

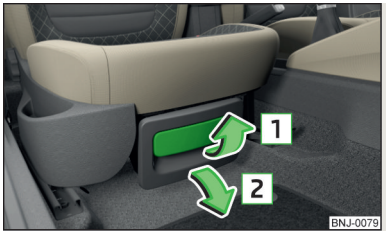


Fig. 81
Opening the storage compartment

Read and observe ! on page 74 first.

Opening

› Pull the handle to position 1 » Fig. 81 in the direction of the arrow.
› Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow 2.

Closing

› Grip the compartment by the handle and close in the opposite direction to that of the arrow 2 » Fig. 81.
› Keep hold of the handle until the compartment is closed.

The storage compartment is designed for storing small objects of up to 1.5 kg. in weight.

! WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

Clothes hook

Read and observe ! on page 74 first.

The clothes hooks are located on the handles of the headliner above each of the rear doors.

The maximum permissible load of the hooks is 2 kg.

! WARNING

- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.
- Do not use clothes hangers for hanging up items of clothing; this may reduce the effectiveness of the head airbags.
- Ensure that any clothes hanging from the hooks do not impair your vision to the rear.

Storage pockets on the front seats



Fig. 82
Map pockets

Read and observe ! on page 74 first.

The Storage pockets » Fig. 82 are intended for the Storage e.g. of maps, magazines, etc.

! WARNING

Never put heavy items in the map pockets – risk of injury.

! CAUTION

Never put large objects into the map pockets, e.g. bottles or objects with sharp edges - risk of damaging the pockets and seat coverings.

Net pockets on the front seat rest



Fig. 83
Net pocket

Read and observe ! on page 74 first.

The net pockets are used for storage of small and light objects, such as mobile phones and the like.

The net pockets are located on the inner sides of the front seat backrests » Fig. 83.

The maximum permissible load of the net pockets is 150 g.

! WARNING

Do not exceed the maximum permissible load of the net pockets. Heavy objects are not secured adequately – risk of injury.

! CAUTION

Never put large objects, e.g. bottles or objects with sharp edges into the map pockets - risk of damaging the pockets and seat coverings.

Storage compartment in the rear centre console



Fig. 84 **Storage compartment: Version 1 / version 2**

Read and observe ! on page 74 first.

The open storage compartment is in the rear of the centre console » Fig. 84.

AUX and USB inputs



Fig. 85
Installation locations of the AUX and USB inputs

Read and observe ! on page 74 first.

The AUX input is above the storage compartment in the front centre console and is identified with the **AUX** mark » Fig. 85.

The MDI input is above the storage compartment in the front centre console and is identified by the symbol ⇢.

Additional information» *Operating instructions Infotainment*.

Luggage compartment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Fastening elements 84
Fixing nets 84
Hooks 85
Storage compartments in the luggage compartment 85
Luggage compartment cover 86
Other positions of the luggage compartment cover 86
Roll-up cover 87
Storage compartments under the floor 87
Cargo element 88
Flexible storage compartment 88
Class N1 vehicles 88

Please observe the following for the purpose of maintaining good handling characteristics of your vehicle:

› Distribute loads as evenly as possible.
› Place heavy objects as far forward as possible.
› Attach the items of luggage to the lashing eyes or by using the fixing nets » page 84.

In the event of an accident, even small and light objects gain so much kinetic energy that they can cause severe injuries.

The magnitude of the kinetic energy is dependent on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and the weight of the object.

Example: In the event of a frontal collision at a speed of 50 km/h, an object weighing 4.5 kg produces energy corresponding to 20 times its own weight. This means that it results in a weight of approx. 90 kg " ".

Luggage compartment light
The warning light turns on when tailgate is opened.

The warning light turns off when the tailgate is closed.

If the boot lid is open and the ignition switched off, the light will extinguish automatically after around 10 minutes.

WARNING

- Always store transported objects in the boot and attach them to the lashing eyes.
- Loose objects can be thrown forward during a sudden manoeuvre or in case of an accident and can injure the occupants or other road users.
- Loose objects could hit a deployed airbag and injure occupants – risk to life!
- Please note that the handling properties of the vehicle may be affected when transporting heavy objects as the centre of gravity can be shifted – risk of accident. The speed and style of driving must be adjusted accordingly.
- If the items of luggage or objects are attached to the lashing eyes with unsuitable or damaged lashing straps, injuries can occur in the event of braking manoeuvres or accidents. To prevent items of luggage from moving around, always use suitable lashing straps that are firmly attached to the lashing eyes.
- Items carried in the luggage compartment must be stowed in such a way that no objects are able to slip forward under sudden driving manoeuvres or braking – risk of injury.
- When transporting objects in the luggage compartment that has been enlarged by folding the rear seats forward, ensure the safety of the passengers transported on the other rear seats » page 10.
- Do not drive with the luggage compartment lid open or unlatched, otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- Do not exceed the permissible axle loads and permissible gross weight of the vehicle – risk of accident!
- Do not transport people in the boot!

CAUTION

- Please ensure that the heating elements for the rear window heater are not damaged as a result of abrasive objects.
- Tyre pressure must be adjusted to the load » page 161.

Fastening elements

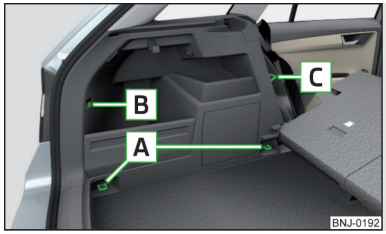


Fig. 86
Fasteners

Read and observe ! and ! on page 83 first.

Overview of the fasteners » Fig. 86

A Lashing eyes for fastening items of luggage and fixing nets
B Fastening element **only** for fastening fixing nets
C Lashing eyes **only** for fastening fixing nets

The upper front lashing eye C is located behind the folding rear seat backrest.

The maximum permissible static load of the individual lashing eyes A is 3.5 kN (350 kg).

! CAUTION

The lashing eyelets A cannot be used for attaching bags and nets when the variable loading floor is in the upper position » page 89[1].

Fixing nets

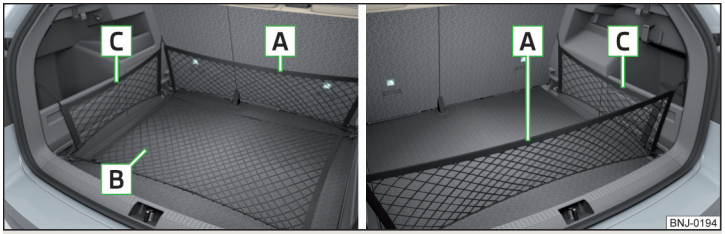


Fig. 87 **Fastening examples for nets**

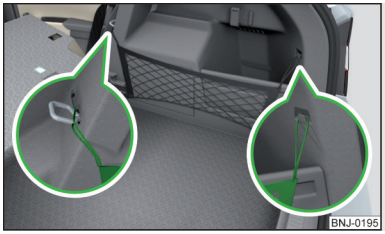


Fig. 88
Fastening vertical pocket

Read and observe ! and ! on page 83 first.

Securing of the nets » Fig. 87 **and** » Fig. 88

A Horizontal pocket
B Floor net
C Vertical pocket (only applies to some vehicles)

The maximum permissible load of the fixing nets is 1.5 kg.

! WARNING

Do not exceed the maximum permissible load of the fixing nets. Heavy objects are not secured adequately – risk of injury.

[1] Applies to vehicles with a variable loading floor.

CAUTION

- Do not place sharp objects in the nets – risk of damaging the net.
- The lashing eyelets A » Fig. 86 *on page 84* cannot be used for attaching nets, when the variable cargo floor is in the upper position » page 89[1].

Hooks



Fig. 89
Hooks

Read and observe and on page 83 first.

The hook is intended to be used to affix small items of luggage such as bags.

The hooks are located on both sides of the luggage compartment » Fig. 89.

The maximum permissible load of the hook is 7.5 kg.

CAUTION

- Place the item of luggage suspended from a hook, if possible, in the storage compartment B » Fig. 90 *on page 85*, otherwise there is a risk of damaging the storage compartment cover.
- If an item of luggage weighing more than 2.5 kg is suspended on the hook, then we recommend removing the storage compartment cover B » Fig. 90 *on page 85*, otherwise there is a risk of damaging the storage compartment cover.

Storage compartments in the luggage compartment

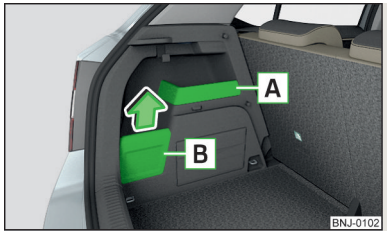


Fig. 90
Storage compartments

Read and observe and on page 83 first.

Storage compartments » Fig. 90

A Fixed

B With removable cover

Remove the cover

› Remove the cover of the storage compartment B in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 90.

The removable storage compartment A » Fig. 90 is suitable for stowing small objects weighing up to 1.5 kg in total.

The storage compartment B is designed for storing small objects of up to 2.5 kg. in weight in total.

CAUTION

When handling the cover of the storage compartment B, ensure that this or the luggage compartment trim is not damaged.

[1] Applies to vehicles with a variable loading floor.

Luggage compartment cover

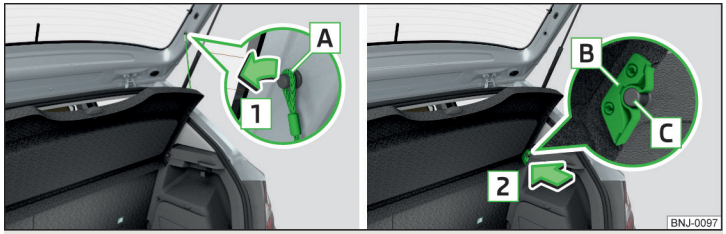


Fig. 91 **Removing the boot cover**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 83 first.

The boot cover can be removed if you want to transport bulky goods.

Removing

› Unhook the retaining straps A from the flap in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 91.
› Hold the cover in the upper position and press the bottom of the cover in the area of the pin C.
› Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow 2.

The removed cover can be stowed in two positions » Fig. 92 *on page 86*.

Fitting

› Position the mounts on the cover B onto the side trim panel via pins C » Fig. 91.
› Press on the upper side of the cover so that the mounts fully interlock into the pins.
› Insert the retaining bands A opposite to the direction of arrow 1 on the boot lid.

The maximum permissible load of the luggage compartment cover is 1 kg.

! WARNING

No objects are to be placed on the boot lid. There is the danger of injuries during sudden braking or vehicle impact.

! CAUTION

- When closing the boot lid, jamming and damage to the luggage compartment cover or the side trim panel can occur if handled incorrectly. The following guidelines must be observed.
  - The holders B on the cover must be resting completely on the pins C on the side panel » Fig. 91.
  - The items which are transported must not exceed the height of the luggage compartment cover.
  - The cover must not be jammed in the surrounding seal of the luggage compartment lid when it is in the upper position.
  - There must be no object in the gap between the cover in the upper position and the rear backrest.

i Note

If the support straps A » Fig. 91 are attached to the boot lid, then the boot cover will raise when the boot is opened.

Other positions of the luggage compartment cover

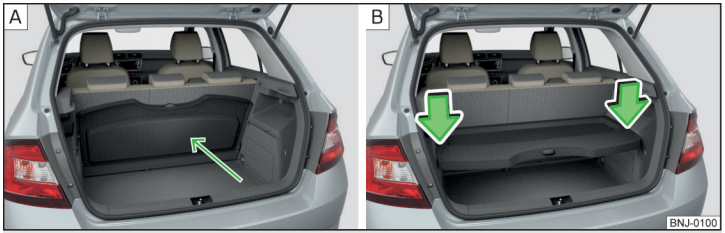


Fig. 92 **Luggage compartment cover: stowed behind the rear seats / in the lower position**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 83 first.

The luggage compartment cover can be placed in the following positions: » Fig. 92

A Behind the rear seat backrests
B In the lower position

Store cover in the lower position

› Press the top of the cover in the arrow direction » Fig. 92 - B.

In the front area, slots B » Fig. 91 *on page 86* on the cover must be fully engaged with the bolts on the side trim. In the back, the cover must be secured at both ends under the latching.

In the lower position, the cover is designed for storing small objects up to a weight of 2.5 kg in total.

Roll-up cover

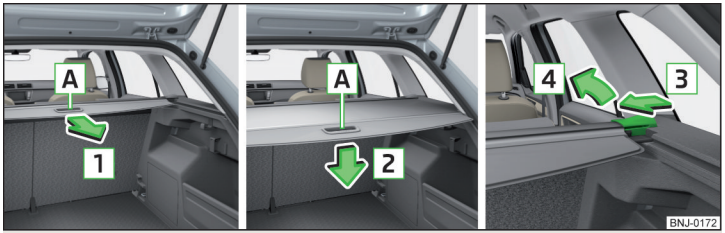


Fig. 93 **Roll-up cover: Pull-out / roll-up / remove**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 83 first.

Pulling out

› Grasp the cover on handle A and pull it out in the direction of the arrow 1 until it clicks audibly into the secured position » Fig. 93.

Rolling up

› Push the cover in the area of handle A in the direction of the arrow 2 » Fig. 93.

The cover rolls up automatically.

Removing

› The cover can be rolled up before removing.
› Press on the side of the cross bar in the direction of arrow 3 and remove the cover in the arrow direction 4 » Fig. 93.

Inserting

› First insert the cover on the left side.
› Press on the side of the cross bar in the direction of arrow 3 and insert the cover against arrow direction 4 » Fig. 93.

! WARNING

No objects should be placed on the foldable boot cover. There is the danger of injuries during sudden braking or vehicle impact.

Storage compartments under the floor

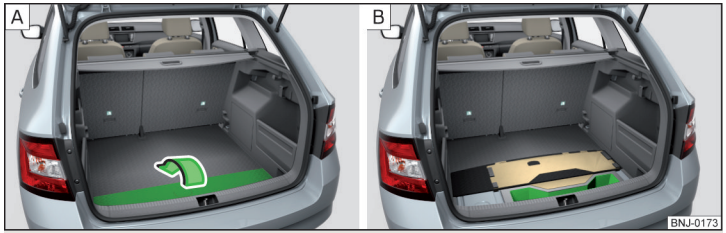


Fig. 94 **Fold the floor back / storage compartment under the floor**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 83 first.

The storage compartment is located under the luggage compartment floor » Fig. 94- B.

› Lift the rear portion of the floor and fold forward in the direction of arrow » Fig. 94- A.

The storage compartment is designed for storing small objects of up to 15 kg. in weight in total.

! CAUTION

- The following instructions must be observed to avoid damage to the storage compartment.
  - Do not store any sharp objects in the storage compartment.
  - Place the items carefully into the storage compartment.
  - Do not place pressure on any points in the storage compartment.

Cargo element

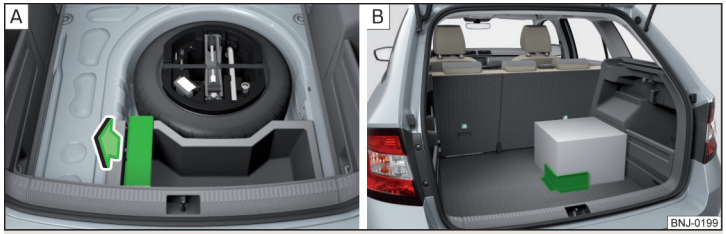


Fig. 95 **Removing cargo element/example on how to mount the load by means of the cargo element**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 83 first.

The Cargo element can be stored under the floor in the boot.

The cargo element is designed for attaching and securing objects with a maximum total weight of 8 kg.

Usage of Cargo element

› Remove the cargo element in the direction of arrow » Fig. 95 - A.
› The Cargo element with Velcro element allows fastening near the rear seats on the floor of the luggage compartment » Fig. 95 - B.

Flexible storage compartment



Fig. 96
Flexible storage compartment

Read and observe ! and ! on page 83 first.

The flexible storage compartment can be installed on either side of the boot » Fig. 96.

Fitting

› Place both ends of the storage compartment into the openings on the right side panel of the boot.
› Push the storage compartment down to lock it.

Removing

› Grasp the storage compartment on the two upper corners.
› Remove the storage compartment by pulling upwards and then towards you.

The storage compartment is designed for storing small objects with a maximum total weight of 8 kg.

Class N1 vehicles

Read and observe ! and ! on page 83 first.

In class N1 vehicles that are not fitted with a protective grille, a lashing set that complies with the EN 12195 standard (1-4) must be used for fastening the load.

Proper functioning of the electrical installation is essential for safe vehicle operation. It is important to ensure that the electrical installation is not damaged during the adjustment process or when the storage area is being loaded and unloaded.

Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Setting in the upper position 89
Setting in the lower position 89
Removing/inserting 90
Folding / Securing 90

The maximum permissible load of the variable loading floor is 75 kg. For the transport of heavy loads, adjust the variable loading floor to the lower position or remove it from the vehicle.

Setting in the upper position

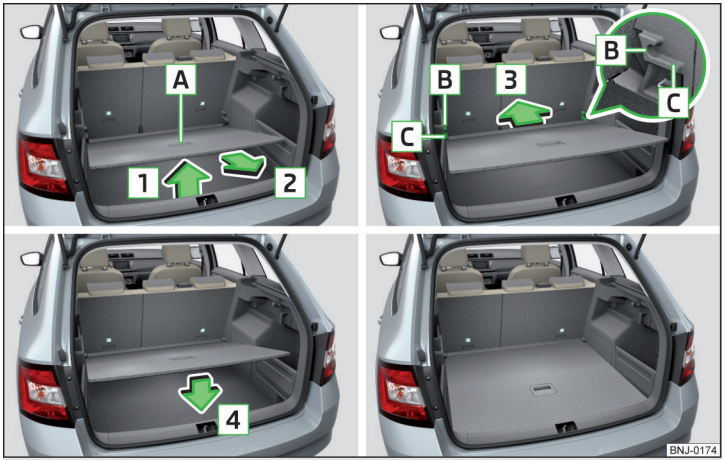


Fig. 97 **Set the variable loading floor to the upper position**

The variable loading floor in the lower position can be set to the upper position as follows.

› Grasp the variable loading floor at handle A » Fig. 97.
› Lift the variable loading floor in the direction of arrow 1 and move partially backwards in the direction of arrow 2.
› Lift the variable loading floor in the front area and place on edge C.
› Insert the variable loading floor into slots B up to the stop in the direction of arrow 3.
› Place the variable loading floor in the direction of arrow 4.

Note

When in the upper position, there is space for storing items underneath the variable loading floor.

Setting in the lower position

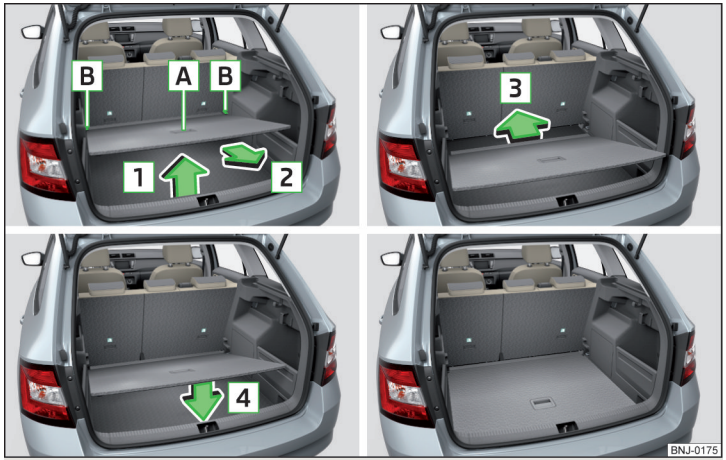


Fig. 98 **Set the variable loading floor to the lower position**

The variable loading floor in the upper position can be set to the lower position as follows.

› Grasp the variable loading floor at handle A » Fig. 98.
› Lift the variable loading floor in the direction of arrow 1 and partially move in the direction of arrow 2 until it detaches from brackets B.
› Place the variable loading floor onto the floor covering of the luggage compartment while tilted forward.
› Push the variable loading floor in the direction of arrow 3 up to the stop.
› Place the variable loading floor in the direction of arrow 4.

Removing/inserting

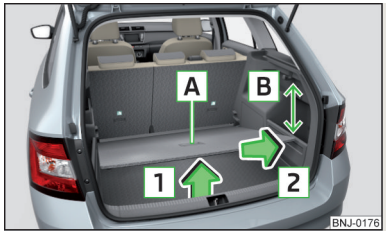


Fig. 99
Remove variable loading floor

Removing

› Grasp the variable loading floor at handle A » Fig. 99.
› Lift the variable loading floor in the direction of arrow 1 until its rear area is about 15 cm B below the edge of the foldable cover.
› Remove the variable loading floor from the vehicle by moving it in the direction of arrow 2.

Inserting

› Grasp the variable loading floor at handle A » Fig. 99.
› Insert the variable loading floor matching the front area into the vehicle about 15 cm B beneath the edge of the foldable cover.
› Then follow the same steps as when setting the upper position » page 89 or the lower position » page 89.

CAUTION

▪ When removing or inserting the variable loading floor, a distance of 15 cm B » Fig. 99 underneath the edge of the foldable cover must be adhered to - risk of damaging the boot lid seal.
▪ After removing the variable cargo floor, place it in such a way that it cannot be damaged or soiled.

Folding / Securing



Fig. 100 **Fold up variable loading floor / secure variable loading floor**

For easier handling, e. g. with the spare tyre, the variable load floor can be folded up and fastened by means of a hook on the frame of the boot lid.

The variable loading floor can be folded up in both positions (both upper and lower) and fastened.

› Grasp the variable loading floor at handle A » Fig. 100.
› Place the variable loading floor in the direction of the arrow.
› Hook the B hook to the frame of the boot lid.

WARNING

The folded-up variable cargo floor limits the driver's view to the rear.

CAUTION

Before closing the tailgate, the variable loading floor is to be **unhooked from the frame** and set in the upper or lower position - there is a risk of damage to the hook.

Bicycle carrier in the luggage compartment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Install/remove crossmember 91
Fitting/removing the bike rack 92
Place bicycle into the carrier 92
Ensure the stability of the bicycles with a belt 93

Up to two bicycles can be transported in a carrier in the luggage compartment.

Maximum size of the transported bikes: 19 "frame with 26" wheels.

Before transporting, the following steps must be taken.

› Remove the roll-up cover » page 87.
› Push the head rests into the seat backrests until they click into position » page 70.
› Fold the rear seat forward » page 73.
› Fold the rear seat backrests forward » page 72.

WARNING

When transporting bicycles, ensuring the safety of the passengers is paramount.

CAUTION

- Take care handling the bicycle - there is a risk of damaging the vehicle.
- The bike rack cannot be installed if the variable cargo floor is stowed in the luggage compartment.

Install/remove crossmember

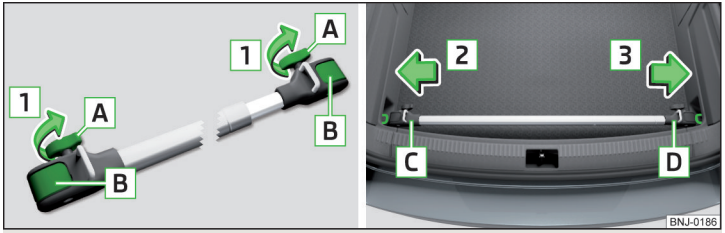


Fig. 101 **Install crossmember: Loosen the screws and unlock brackets / place crossmember on the lashing eyelets**

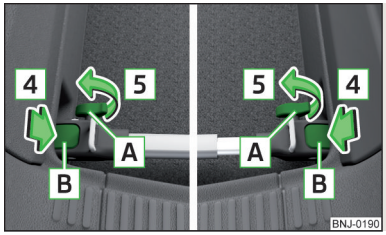


Fig. 102
Install crossmember: Tighten the screws

Read and observe and on page 91 first.

Fitting

› Unscrew screws A » Fig. 101 in direction of arrow 1 completely and partially pull out.

The brackets B are unlocked.

› Set the crossbar so that the screws A are pointing forward.
› Place the crossmember with the fixed part C onto the left lashing eyelet in the direction of arrow 2.
› Pull out part D of the cross member and place onto the right lashing eyelet in arrow direction 3.
› Push in the brackets B » Fig. 102 in the direction of arrow 4 until they audibly click into place.
› Turn the screws A in the direction of arrow 5 up to the stop .
› Check how well the crossmember is fastened by pulling on it.

Removing

Removal is carried out in the reverse order.

Fitting/removing the bike rack

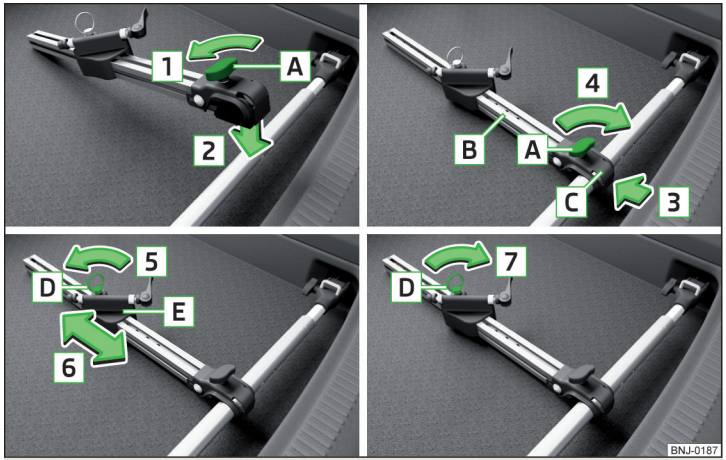


Fig. 103 **Fitting the bike rack**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 91 first.

Fitting

› Loosen screw A on the bicycle rack (hereinafter only referred to as carrier) in direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 103.
› Place the carrier of the crossmember in the direction of arrow 2.
› Hold part B of the carrier firmly and press on part C of the support in the direction of arrow 3.
› Remove screw A in the direction of arrow 4.
› Screw out screw D in the direction of arrow 5 and remove.
› Place part E in the direction of arrow 6, depending on bike size, in one of the possible positions » !.
› Insert screw D and tighten in the direction of arrow 7.

Removing

Removal is carried out in the reverse order.

! CAUTION

The bike stowed in the rack must not touch either the boot lid or other vehicle parts - there is a risk of damage to the vehicle occurring.

Place bicycle into the carrier

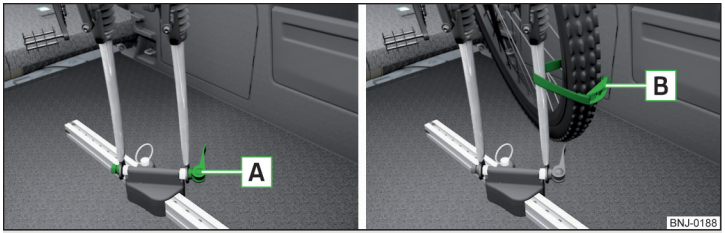


Fig. 104 **Insert the front fork of the bicycle into the carrier / mounting example of the front wheel**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 91 first.

› Remove the front wheel from the bike.
› Release the quick release A » Fig. 104 on the carrier and adjust according to the bicycle fork width.
› Place the bicycle fork on the fixing axle and tighten with the quick release A.
› Set the left bicycle pedal towards the vehicle front to secure the front wheel more easily.
› If you want to transport two bicycles, loosen screw A » Fig. 103 *on page 92* on the carrier and move the carrier along with attached bike to the left.

The handlebar must not touch the side window of the luggage compartment.

› Tighten screw A » Fig. 103 *on page 92* on the support.
› Guide the boot lid gently downwards and check while doing this that there is no contact between the handlebar and the rear window.
› If necessary, the position of the sliding part E » Fig. 103 *on page 92* can be adjusted.
› The dismantled front wheel can best be stowed between the left crank and the bicycle frame.
› Attach the front wheel with belt B to the front fork » Fig. 104 or to the bicycle frame.
› The second carrier is installed and the bicycle is secured in a similar way.

Ensure the stability of the bicycles with a belt

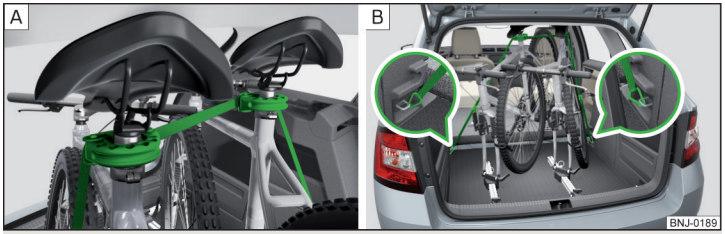


Fig. 105 **Ensure the stability of the bicycles with a belt**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 91 first.

› In order to loosen the rubber part of the clamp, push both parts against each other and open the clamp.
› Position the clamp with the rubber part in the direction of travel as low down on the saddle support as possible and close it.
› When transporting two bicycles, stretch the belt » Fig. 105 - A between the saddles by moving the bicycles apart.
› Hook the carabiners on the ends of the belt into the lower lashing eyelets behind the rear seats » Fig. 105 - B.
› Pull the belt through the tensioning clasps on both sides in turn.
› If necessary, you can correct the position of the bicycles in the vehicle afterwards.

Roof rack

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

fixing points for base support 94
Roof load 94

! WARNING

- The items being transported on the roof rack must be reliably attached – risk of accident.
- Always secure the load with appropriate and undamaged lashing straps or tensioning straps.
- Distribute the load evenly over the roof rack system.
- When transporting heavy objects or objects which take up a large area on the roof rack system, handling of the car may change as a result of the displacement of the centre of gravity. The style of driving and speed must therefore be adapted to circumstances.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden driving/braking manoeuvres.
- The permissible roof load, permissible axle loads and gross permissible weight of the vehicle must not be exceeded under any circumstances – risk of accident.

! CAUTION

- Only roof racks from the ŠKODA Original Accessories range should be used.
- The fitting instructions supplied with the roof luggage rack system must be observed when handling roof racks.
- Ensure that the boot lid does not hit the roof load when opened.
- The height of the vehicle changes after mounting a roof luggage rack system and the load that is secured to it. Compare the vehicle height with available clearances, such as underpasses and garage doors.
- Always remove the roof luggage rack system before entering an automated car wash.
- Ensure the roof aerial is not impaired by the secured load.

For the sake of the environment

The increased aerodynamic drag results in a higher fuel consumption.

fixing points for base support



Fig. 106 **Attachment points**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 93 first.

Installation location of the attachment points for base support » Fig. 106

A Front attachment points
B Rear attachment points

Perform the assembly and disassembly according to the enclosed instructions.

! CAUTION

Observe the information regarding the assembly and disassembly in the enclosed instructions.

Roof load

Read and observe ! and ! on page 93 first.

The maximum permissible roof load (including roof rack system) of **75 kg** and the maximum permissible total weight of the vehicle should not be exceeded.

The full permissible roof load cannot be used if a roof rack system with a lower load carrying capacity is used. In this case, the roof rack system must only be loaded up to the maximum weight limit specified in the fitting instructions.

Heating and air conditioning

Heating, ventilation, cooling

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Air outlet vents 95
Recirculated air mode 96
Heating 96
Air conditioning (manual air conditioning) 97
Climatronic (automatic air conditioning) 97
Malfunctions 99

The heating and air conditioning systems ventilate and heat the vehicle interior. The air conditioning system also cools and dehumidifies the vehicle interior.

The heating effect is dependent upon the coolant temperature, thus full heat output only occurs when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

The heating and air conditioning systems only operate when the ignition is switched on.

The cooling system operates only if the following conditions are met.

✓ The cooling system is switched on.
✓ The engine is running.
✓ The outside temperature is above approximately +2 °C.
✓ The blower is switched on.

If the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and air humidity drops in the vehicle. The cooling system prevents the windows from misting up during winter months.

It is possible to briefly activate re-circulated air mode to enhance the cooling effect » page 96.

! WARNING

- For your own safety and that of other road users, ensure that all the windows are free of ice, snow and misting.
- The blower should always be on to prevent the windows from misting up.

WARNING (Continued)

- Under certain circumstances, air at a temperature of about 5 °C can flow out of the vents when the cooling system is switched on.
- To reduce health risks (e.g. common colds), the following instructions for the use of the cooling system are to be observed.
  - The difference between the indoor temperature and the outdoor air temperature should not be greater than about 5 ° C.
  - The cooling system is to be turned off about 10 minutes before the end of the journey.
  - Once a year, disinfection of the air conditioner or the Climatronic is to be carried out by a specialist company.

CAUTION

- The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free (e.g. of ice, snow or leaves) to ensure that the heating and cooling system operates properly.
- After switching on the cooling system **condensation** from the evaporator of the air conditioning may drip down and form a puddle below the vehicle. This is not a leak!
- If the coolant temperature is too high, the cooling system is switched off to ensure that the engine cools down.

Note

The used air flows out through the vents in the luggage compartment.

Air outlet vents

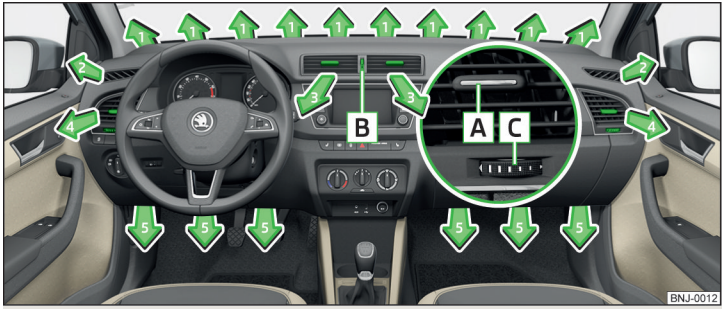


Fig. 107 **Air outlet vents**

Read and observe and on page 94 first.

Warmed, not warmed fresh or cooled air will flow out of the opened air outlet vents according to the setting of the control and the outside atmospheric conditions.

The direction of airflow can be adjusted using the air outlet vents **3** and **4** » Fig. 107 and the outlets can also be opened and closed individually.

Changing the direction of air flow

› To change the height of the air flow, turn the horizontal fins upward or downward using the movable adjuster A » Fig. 107.
› To adjust the lateral direction of the air flow, turn the vertical fins with the movable adjuster A to the left or to the right.

Opening

› Turn the regulator B upwards » Fig. 107.
› Turn the regulator B to the right.

Closing

› Turn the regulator B downwards » Fig. 107.
› Turn the regulator B to the left.

An overview of the available settings for adjusting the direction of the air outlet

Set the direction of the air outlet	Active air outlet vents » Fig. 107
	1, 2, 4
	1, 2, 4, 5
	3, 4
	4, 5

Note

To ensure that the heating and air conditioning systems work properly, do not block the air outlet vents.

Recirculated air mode

Read and observe ! and ! on page 94 first.

Recirculated air mode prevents polluted air from outside the vehicle getting into the vehicle, for example when driving through a tunnel or when standing in a traffic jam.

In recirculated air mode air is sucked out of the interior of the vehicle and then fed back into the interior.

Heater
To **switch** air recirculation on / off, press the symbol key.

Recirculated air mode is **switched off automatically** if the following conditions are met.

✓ The blower is switched on.
✓ The airflow adjuster is in position.

Air conditioning (manual air conditioner)
To **switch** air recirculation on / off, press the symbol key.

Recirculated air mode is **switched on automatically** if the following conditions are met.

✓ The blower is switched on.
✓ The airflow adjuster is outside position.
✓ The temperature controller is turned to the left.

Recirculated air mode is **switched off automatically** if the following conditions are met.

✓ The blower is switched on.
✓ The airflow adjuster is in position.

Climatronic (automatic air conditioning)
To **switch on** recirculated air mode, press the symbol key. The display shows the icon.

To **switch off** recirculated air mode, press the symbol key again. The icon in the display goes out.

! WARNING

The recirculation system cannot be switched on for a longer period of time, because there is no supply of fresh air from the outside. "Stale air" may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch off recirculated air mode as soon as the windows start to mist up.

! CAUTION

We recommend not smoking in the vehicle when the recirculating air operation is switched on. The smoke sucked from inside the vehicle is deposited on the evaporator of the air conditioner. This produces a permanent odour when the air conditioning system is operating which can only be eliminated through considerable effort and expense (replacement of compressor).

Heating

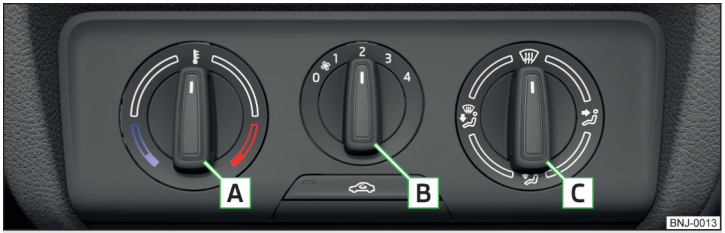


Fig. 108 **Heating controls**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 94 first.

Individual functions can be set off or on by turning the knob or pressing the button. When this function is switched on, the warning light illuminates in the button.

Functions of the individual controls » Fig. 108

A Setting temperature
› Lower temperature
› Increase temperature

B Set the blower level (level 0: Blowers off, level 4: the highest blower speed)

C Set the direction of the air outlet » page 95
- Air flow to the windows
- Air flow to the upper body
- Air flow in the footwell
- Airflow to the windows and into the footwell

Switch recirculation on/off » page 96

Air conditioning (manual air conditioning)

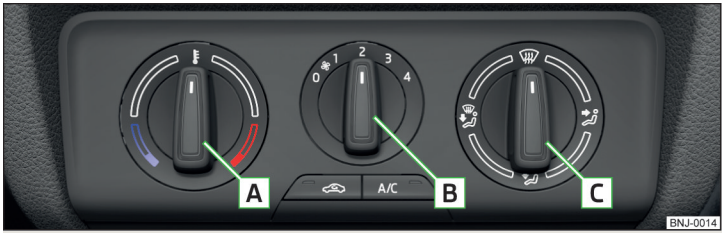


Fig. 109 **Controls of the air conditioning**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 94 first.

Individual functions can be set off or on by turning the knob or pressing the corresponding button. When this function is switched on, the warning light illuminates in the button.

Functions of the individual controls » Fig. 109

A Setting temperature
- Lower temperature
- Increase temperature

B Set the blower level (level 0: Blowers off, level 4: the highest blower speed)

C Set the direction of the air outlet » page 95
- Air flow to the windows
- Air flow to the upper body
- Air flow in the footwell
- Airflow to the windows and into the footwell

Switch recirculation on/off » page 96

A/C Switch the cooling system on/off

Information on cooling system
The cooling system operates only if the following conditions are met » page 94.

The warning light in the button A/C lights up after activation even if not all of the conditions for the function of the cooling system have been met. The operational readiness of the cooling system is indicated by the indicator light in the button lighting up.

If recirculated air mode is turned to position when the blower is on, the cooling system is switched on. The cooling system is switched off again by turning the air distribution control out of the position .

If recirculated air mode is outside position when the recirculating air mode is on, the cooling system is switched on.

Note
During operation of the air conditioning, under certain circumstances an increase in engine idle speed may occur in order to ensure sufficient heating comfort.

Climatronic (automatic air conditioning)



Fig. 110 **Controls the Climatronic**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 94 first.

Climatronic in **automatic mode** ensures the best-possible setting of the temperature of the outflowing air, the blower stage and air distribution.

The system also takes sunlight into account, which eliminates the need to alter the settings manually.

Individual functions can be set off or on by turning the knob or pressing the corresponding button. When switched on the display shows the corresponding icon.

Functions of the various controls and display » Fig. 110

1 Setting temperature
   › Lower temperature
   › Increase temperature
2 Selected temperature
3 Degrees Celsius or Fahrenheit
4 Automatic operation of the air conditioning system is switched on
5 Intensive windshield defroster switched on
6 Direction of air flow
7 Recirculated air mode activated
8 Cooling system activated
9 Set blower speed
10 Set the temperature (turn to the left: Reduce fan speed, turn to the right: Increase blower speed)
11 Interior temperature sensor

MAX Switching the intensive windshield defroster on/off - when this function is switched on, the warning light illuminates in the button

AUTO Switching automatic mode on

Switching the airflow to the windows on and off

Switching the airflow to the upper body on and off

Switching the airflow to the footwell on and off

Switch recirculation on/off » page 96

A/C Switch the cooling system on/off

After the cooling system is switched off, only the ventilation function remains active, whereby the lowest temperature that can be reached is the outside temperature.

Setting temperature
The set temperature value appears in the display (pos. 2 » Fig. 110).

The interior temperature can be set between +16 °C and +29 °C. The interior temperature is regulated automatically within this range.

If you set the temperature to below +16 °C, "LO" appears in the display.

If you set the temperature to higher than +29 °C, "HI" appears in the display.

At both end positions, Climatronic runs at maximum cooling/heating output and the temperature is automatically not regulated.

Switching between Celsius and Fahrenheit
Press buttons MAX and A/C simultaneously and hold for about 2 seconds.

The information appears in the display in the desired temperature measurement unit (pos. 3 » Fig. 110).

Controlling blower
The Climatronic system controls the blower stages automatically in line with the interior- and ambient temperatures. However, the blower level can be manually adjusted to suit your particular needs.

If the blower speed is reduced to a minimum, Climatronic is switched off.

The set blower speed is indicated by the corresponding number of segments (pos. 9 » Fig. 110) in the display.

Automatic mode
The automatic mode is used in order to maintain a constant temperature and to demist the windows in the interior of the car.

To **switch on** press the AUTO button. The display shows AUTO (pos. 4 » Fig. 110).

Automatic mode can be **switched off** by pressing any of the air distribution buttons or by increasing/decreasing the blower speed. The temperature is nevertheless regulated.

WARNING
- Do not switch off the Climatronic system for longer than necessary.
- Switch on the Climatronic system as soon as the windows mist up.

Note
- Do not stick anything onto or cover the interior temperature sensor 11 » Fig. 110 as this can have an unfavourable effect on the Climatronic system.
- As soon as the windscreen mists up, press the symbol button MAX. Press the AUTO button once the windscreen has demisted.
- During operation of the Climatronic, under certain circumstances an increase in engine idle speed can occur in order to ensure adequate heating comfort.

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! and ! on page 94 first.

If the cooling system does not operate at outside temperatures higher than +5 °C, there is a problem in the system. This can be because of the following.

› One of the fuses has blown. Check the fuse and replace if necessary » page 182.

› The cooling system has switched off automatically for a short time because the coolant temperature of the engine is too hot » page 29.

If you are not able to resolve the fault yourself, or if the cooling output has reduced, switch off the cooling system and obtain assistance from a specialist garage.

Driving

Starting-off and driving

Starting and stopping the engine using the key

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Electronic immobilizer 100
Steering lock locking / unlocking 100
Turn ignition on / off and start the engine 101
Stopping the engine 101

With the key in the ignition, the ignition can be switched on and off and the engine can be started / stopped.

WARNING

- While driving with the engine stopped, the ignition must always be switched on » page 101, *Turn ignition on / off and start the engine*.
  - With the ignition off, the steering may lock » page 100 - danger of an accident!
- Do not withdraw the ignition key from the ignition lock until the vehicle has come to a stop » page 107, *Parking*. Otherwise, the steering may lock - danger of an accident!
- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. Unauthorized persons such as children could lock the car, turn on the ignition or start the engine -risk of injury, accidents and damage!
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running - risk of accident, damage or theft!
- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle has come to a halt – risk of accident.

WARNING

- Never (e.g. in garages) run the engine in a closed place - risk of poisoning and death!
- Do not leave any items (e.g. cleaning cloths or tools) in the engine compartment. There is a fire hazard and the risk of engine damage.
- Never cover the engine with additional insulation material (e.g. with a blanket) – risk of fire.

CAUTION

- Only start the engine when the engine and the vehicle are stationary - risk of starter and engine damage!
- Do not push-start the engine – there is a risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 174.

Note

Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine has started. The engine reaches its operating temperature faster this way.

Electronic immobilizer

Read and observe ! and ! on page 100 first.

The electronic immobilizer makes a possible attempted theft or unauthorized use of your vehicle more difficult.

An electronic chip is integrated in the head of the key. The electronic immobiliser is deactivated with the aid of this chip when the key is inserted in the ignition lock.

As soon as the ignition key is removed from the ignition lock the immobilizer is automatically activated.

The engine will not start if an unauthorized ignition key is used.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

Immobilizer active.
IMMOBILIZER ACTIVE

Steering lock locking / unlocking

Read and observe ! and ! on page 100 first.

The steering lock (steering lock) deters any attempted theft of your vehicle.

Locking

› Withdraw the ignition key.
› Turn the steering wheel to the left or right until the steering lock clicks into place.

Unlocking

› Insert the key into the ignition lock.

› Switch on the ignition » page 101.

The steering column lock is unlocked.

If the ignition switch cannot be turned on, turn the steering wheel back and forth slightly to unlock the steering lock.

Turn ignition on / off and start the engine

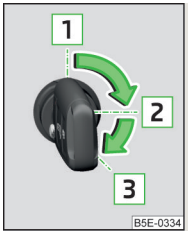


Fig. 111
Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock

Read and observe and on page 100 first.

Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock » Fig. 111

1 Ignition switched off, engine switched off
2 Ignition switched on
3 Starting engine

Switching ignition on/off

› Turn key to position 2.

The ignition is switched on.

› Turn key to position 1.

The ignition is switched off.

Procedure for starting the engine

› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission**, shift gear lever to neutral, depress the clutch pedal and hold it there until the engine starts.
› On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in position **P** or **N** and depress the brake pedal until the engine starts.
› Turn the key into position 3 as far as it will go - the engine's starting procedure will commence (do not touch the accelerator).
› Release the key, the engine will start automatically.

After letting go, the vehicle key will return to position 2.

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds, turn the key to position 1. Repeat the start-up process after approx. half a minute.

For vehicles with **diesel engines** the glow plug warning light goes on during starting. The engine can be started after the indicator light goes out.

Note

- The engine running noises may at first be louder for a short time after starting the cold engine. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.
- You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.

Stopping the engine

Read and observe and on page 100 first.

› Stop the vehicle » page 107, *Parking*.
› Turn key to position 1 » Fig. 111 *on page 101*.

The engine and the ignition are switched off simultaneously.

For vehicles with automatic transmission, the ignition key can only be removed if the selector lever is in position **P** .

CAUTION

Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been operated over a prolonged period at high loads but leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute. This prevents any possible accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off.

Note

The radiator fan can intermittently continue to run for approximately 10 minutes after the ignition has been switched off.

Starting and stopping the engine at the push of the button

Introduction



Fig. 112
Starter button (START ENGINE STOP)

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Steering column lock locking / unlocking 102
Switch ignition on / off 103
Starting the engine 103
Switching off the engine 103
Problems with the engine start 104

The ignition can be switched on and off and the engine can be started / stopped with the starter button » Fig. 112.

The key must be in the vehicle to unlock the steering, start the vehicle and drive.

WARNING

- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. Unauthorized persons such as children could lock the car, turn on the ignition or start the engine -risk of injury, accidents and damage!
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running - there is a risk of theft, accident etc.!
- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle has come to a halt – risk of accident.

WARNING

Never (e.g. in garages) run the engine in a closed place - risk of poisoning and death!

CAUTION

- The system can recognize the valid key, even if it has been accidentally left on the vehicle roof - there is danger of loss or damage to the key!
- Only start the engine when the engine and the vehicle are stationary - risk of starter and engine damage!
- Do not push-start the engine – there is a risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 174.

Note

- Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine has started. The engine reaches its operating temperature faster this way.
- The system is protected against inadvertently switching off the engine while driving, this means that the engine can only be switched off in an emergency » page 103.

Steering column lock locking / unlocking

Read and observe ! and ! on page 102 first.

The steering lock (steering lock) deters any attempted theft of your vehicle.

Locking

› Switch off the engine.
› Open the driver door.

The steering lock is locked automatically.

If the driver's door is opened and the ignition is switched off afterwards, the steering is only locked after the vehicle has been locked.

Unlocking

› Open the driver's door and get into the vehicle.
› Close the driver's door.

The steering is locked automatically.

Under certain circumstances (e.g. after switching off the ignition and opening the driver's door), the steering is enabled only when the ignition is switched on or the engine is started.

WARNING

Never let the vehicle roll with locked steering lock - risk of accident!

Switch ignition on / off

Read and observe ! and ! on page 102 first.

› Press the button » Fig. 112 *on page 102* briefly.

The ignition is switched on or off.

On vehicles fitted with a **manual transmission**, the clutch pedal must not be depressed while switching the ignition on or off, otherwise the system would try to start.

On vehicles fitted with a **automatic transmission**, the brake pedal must not be depressed while switching the ignition on or off, otherwise the system would try to start.

If the driver's door is opened while the ignition is on, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

M **Ignition switched on.**

S **IGNITION STILL ON**

When leaving the vehicle always switch off the ignition.

Starting the engine

Read and observe ! and ! on page 102 first.

Procedure for starting the engine

› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission**, shift gear lever to neutral, depress the clutch pedal and hold it there until the engine starts.
› On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in position **P** or **N** and depress the brake pedal until the engine starts.
› Press the starter button » Fig. 112 *on page 102* briefly – the engine starts automatically.

In vehicles with **diesel engines** the glow plug warning light lights up after pressing the button. The engine can be started after the indicator light goes out.

Note

- The engine running noises may at first be louder for a short time after starting the cold engine. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.
- You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.

Switching off the engine

Read and observe ! and ! on page 102 first.

Switching off

› Stop the vehicle » page 107, *Parking*.
› Press the button » Fig. 112 *on page 102* briefly.

The engine and the ignition are switched off simultaneously.

Emergency shutdown

If necessary and in exceptional cases, the engine may even be turned off while driving.

› Press the starter button » Fig. 112 *on page 102* for longer than 1 second or twice within 1 second.

After the emergency stop of the engine, the steering lock will remain unlocked.

CAUTION

Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been operated over a prolonged period at high loads but leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute. This prevents any possible accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off.

Note

The radiator fan can intermittently continue to run for approximately 10 minutes after the ignition has been switched off.

Problems with the engine start



Fig. 113
Starting the engine - Press the button with the key

Read and observe ! and ! on page 102 first.

The key in the vehicle cannot be verified
If the key in the vehicle cannot be verified, then engine cannot be started by pressing a button.

One of the following messages are shown in the information cluster display.

M **Key not detected. Owner's manual!**
M **Key not found.**
S **NO KEY**

This can be because of the following.
› The battery in the key is almost out of charge.
› The key is malfunctioning.
› There is interference in the signal between the system and the key (strong electromagnetic field).

Try to start the engine by pressing the knob with the key » Fig. 113.

System fault
If the following message appears on the display of the instrument cluster, there is a system malfunction.

M **Keyless access system faulty.**
S **KEYLESS ACCESS SYSTEM FAULTY**

Try to start the engine by pressing the knob with the key » Fig. 113.

! CAUTION
The key can only be verified if it is in the vehicle. It is therefore not always necessary to know where the key is.

i Note
▪ When attempting to start, the key bit must be pointed towards the button » Fig. 113.
▪ If engine fails to start after pressing the button with the key, seek specialist help.

START-STOPsystem

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation 104
Manually deactivating/activating 105
Information messages 105

The START-STOPsystem (hereinafter referred to only as system) saves fuel and reduces harmful emissions and CO_2 discharge.

If the system determine that the engine is not needed when the vehicle stops (e.g. at the traffic lights), it turns off the engine and starts it again when moving off.

Operation

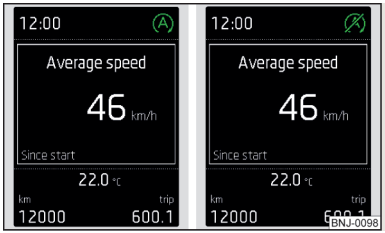


Fig. 114
Display

For the system-dependent automatic engine shut-down when stopping to operate, the following conditions must be met.

✓ For vehicles with **manual transmission**, the shift lever is in the neutral position and the clutch pedal is not depressed.
✓ For vehicles with **automatic transmission** the brake pedal is to be depressed.
✓ The driver's door is closed.

✓ The driver has fastened the seat belt.
✓ The bonnet is closed.
✓ The driving speed exceeded 4 km/h after the last stop.
✓ No trailer is coupled.

Some additional conditions for the system to function cannot be either influenced or recognised by the driver. Therefore, the system can react differently in situations which are identical from the driver's view.

The information as to whether the conditions are met for the automatic engine shut-off, are shown in the display » Fig. 114.

Ⓐ The motor is automatically switched off.

The engine is not turned off when you stop (the conditions for the automatic motor shut-down are not met).

Reasons for the engine running

Running the engine can be essential, for the following reasons.

› The engine temperature for the proper function of the system has not yet been reached.
› The charge state of the vehicle battery is too low.
› The current consumption is too high.
› High air-conditioning or heating capacity (high fan speed, big difference between the desired and actual indoor temperature).

When the engine is shut-down automatically and the system detects that the engine is required such as when the brake pedal is pressed repeatedly then the system automatically starts the engine.

Infotainment display

Information about the current status of the system can be displayed in the Infotainment display » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Note

▪ If the vehicle remains outdoors for a long time in minus temperatures or in direct sunlight, it can take several hours until the internal temperature of the vehicle battery reaches a suitable temperature for proper operation of the system.
▪ If the driver's seat belt is removed for more than approx. 30 seconds or the driver's door is opened during stop mode, the engine will have to be started manually.
▪ No automatic engine shut-down takes place when a vehicle with **automatic transmission** is moving at low speed (e.g. during a traffic jam) and remains stationary after pressing the brake pedal lightly. Automatic engine shutdown takes place if you press the brake pedal down with more force.
▪ For vehicles with **automatic transmission** there is no automatic engine shut-down when the system detects a manoeuvring action due to a large steering angle.

Manually deactivating/activating



Fig. 115
Button for the START-STOP system

Deactivate/activate

› Press the Ⓐ OFF button » Fig. 115.

When system is deactivated, the warning light in the button illuminates.

Note

If the system is automatically deactivated when the engine is turned off, then the automatic start process takes place.

Information messages

The warning symbols are shown in the instrument cluster display.

M **Start the engine manually!**
S **START MANUALLY**

If for example the driver's seat belt is stored, the engine must be started manually.

On vehicles with the starter button the ignition is turned off by the first press of the start button, only after pressing for the second time is the start process initiated.

M **Error: start-stop system**
S **START STOP ERROR**

A system error is present. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Brakes and parking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Information for braking ____ 106
Handbrake ____ 107
Parking ____ 107

WARNING

- Greater physical effort is required for braking when the engine is switched off – risk of accident.
- The clutch pedal must be depressed when braking on a vehicle with manual transmission, when the vehicle is in gear and at low revs. Otherwise, the functionality of the brake system may be impaired – risk of accident!
- When leaving the vehicle never leave persons leave unattended in the vehicle who could release the brake. The vehicle might then move off – risk of accident.
- Observe the recommendations on the new brake pads » page 111.

CAUTION

Never let the brakes slip with light pressure on the pedal if braking is not necessary. This causes the brakes to overheat and can also result in a longer braking distance and excessive wear.

Information for braking

Read and observe ! and ! on page 106 first.

Wear-and-tear

The wear of the brake pads is dependent on the operating conditions and driving style.

The brake pads wear more quickly if a lot of journeys are completed in towns and over short distances or if a very sporty style of driving is adopted.

Under these **severe conditions**, the thickness of the brake pads must also be checked by a specialist garage between services.

Wet roads or road salt

The performance of the brakes can be delayed as the brake discs and brake pads may be moist or have a coating of ice or layer of salt on them in winter. The brakes are cleaned and dried by applying the brakes several times » !.

Corrosion

Corrosion on the brake discs and dirt on the brake pads occur if the vehicle has been parked for a long period and if you do not make much use of the braking system. The brakes are cleaned by applying the brakes several times » !.

Long or steep slopes

Before travelling a long distance with a steep gradient, reduce speed and shift into the next lowest gear. As a result, the braking effect of the engine will be used, reducing the load on the brakes. Any additional braking should be completed intermittently, not continuously.

Emergency brake display

If the brakes are applied in full and the control unit for the braking system considers the situation to be dangerous for the following traffic, the brake light flashes automatically.

After the speed was reduced below around 10 km/h or the vehicle was stopped, the brake light stops flashing and the hazard warning light system switches on. The hazard warning light system is switched off automatically after accelerating or driving off again.

Fault in the brake system

If it is found that the braking distance has suddenly become longer and that the brake pedal can be depressed further, there may be a fault in the brake system.

Visit a specialist garage immediately and adjust your style of driving appropriately as you will not know how great the damage is.

Low brake fluid level

An insufficient level of brake fluid may result in problems in the brake system. The fluid level is monitored electronically » page 32, *Brake system*.

Brake booster

The brake booster increases the pressure generated with the brake pedal. The brake booster only operates when the engine is running.

WARNING

Only apply the brakes for the purpose of drying and cleaning the brake discs if the traffic conditions permit this. Do not place any other road users in jeopardy.

Handbrake



Fig. 116
Handbrake

Read and observe ! and ! on page 106 first.

The handbrake is used when stopping and parking for securing the vehicle against unwanted movement.

Apply

› Pull the handbrake lever firmly upwards.

Undoing

› Pull the handbrake lever up slightly **while** pushing in the locking button » Fig. 116.
› Move the lever right down while pressing the lock button.

The handbrake warning light (P) lights up when the handbrake is applied provided the ignition is on.

A warning signal sounds if the vehicle is inadvertently driven off with the handbrake applied.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M **Release the handbrake!**
S **RELEASE HANDBRAKE**

The handbrake warning is activated if the vehicle is driven at a speed of more than around 5 km/h for more than 3 seconds.

WARNING

Please note that the handbrake must be fully released. A handbrake which is only partially released can result in the rear brakes overheating. This can have a negative effect on the operation of the brake system – risk of accident!

Parking

Read and observe ! and ! on page 106 first.

When stopping and parking, look for a place with a suitable surface » !.

Only carry out the activities while parking in the specified order.

› Bring the vehicle to a stop and depress the brake pedal.
› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› On vehicles with **Automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in the **P** position.
› Switch off the engine.
› For vehicles with **Manual transmission** select the **first gear** or **reverse gear R**.
› Release the brake pedal.

WARNING

The parts of the exhaust system can become very hot. Therefore, never stop the vehicle at places where the underside of your vehicle can come into contact with flammable materials such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel or such like. - Risk of fire and serious injury can occur!

Manual gear shifting and pedals

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Manual gear changing 108
Pedals 108

Manual gear changing

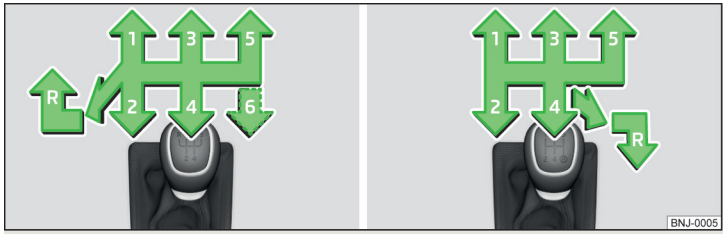


Fig. 117 **The shift pattern: Version 1 / version 2**

The individual gear positions are shown on the gear shift » Fig. 117.

The gearshift indicator must be observed when changing gear » page 39.

Always depress the clutch pedal all the way down. This prevents uneven wear on the clutch.

Engage reverse gear - Version 1
› Stop the vehicle.
› The clutch pedal must be fully depressed.
› Move the shift lever to the idle position, switch and press down.
› Move the shift lever fully to the left and then forward into the **R**position » Fig. 117.

Engage reverse gear - Version 2
› Stop the vehicle.
› The clutch pedal must be fully depressed.
› Move the shift lever to the idle position, switch and press down.
› Move the shift lever fully to the right and then backwards to position **R**.

The reversing lights will come on once reverse gear is engaged, provided the ignition is on.

WARNING
Never engage reverse gear when driving – risk of accident!

CAUTION
- If not in the process of changing gear, do not leave your hand on the gear-shift lever while driving. The pressure from the hand can cause the gearshift mechanism to wear excessively.
- When stopping on a slope, never try to keep the vehicle in position by using the accelerator pedal – this may lead to damage of clutch parts.

Pedals

The operation of the pedals must not be hindered under any circumstances!

In the driver's foot well, only a foot mat, which is attached to the two corresponding attachment points, may be used.

Only use factory-supplied foot mats or foot mats from the range of ŠKODAOriginal Accessories, which are fitted to two the two required attachment points.

WARNING
No objects are allowed in the driver's footwell – there is a risk of obstructing or restriction pedal operation.

Automatic transmission

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Modes and use of selector lever 109
Selector lever lock 110
Manual shifting (Tiptronic) 110
Starting-off and driving 111

The automatic transmission performs automatic gear changes.

The modes for the automatic transmission can be adjusted by the driver by means of the selector lever.

WARNING

- Never accelerate when the mode for moving forward is set with the selector lever - there is a risk of accident!
- Never shift the selector lever to **R** or **P** modes when driving – there is a risk of an accident.
- If the vehicle is in the mode selected **D**, **S**, **R** or Tiptronic and the engine stops when at idle speed, then the brake pedal must be pressed. Even when the engine is idling, power transmission is never completely interrupted – the vehicle will creep.
- When leaving the vehicle, the selector lever is always to be put in the **P** mode. Otherwise the vehicle could then start to move and potentially cause an accident.

CAUTION

- If the selector lever is moved to mode **N** while driving, the accelerator pedal must be released and you will need to wait until the engine has reached its idling speed before moving the selector lever to a forward driving mode again.
- When the outdoor temperature is below -10 ° C, the selector lever, when starting, must always be in **P** mode.
- When stopping on a slope, never try to keep the vehicle in position by using the accelerator pedal – this may lead to gear damage.

Note

After the ignition is switched off, the ignition key can only be withdrawn if the selector lever is in the position **P**.

Modes and use of selector lever

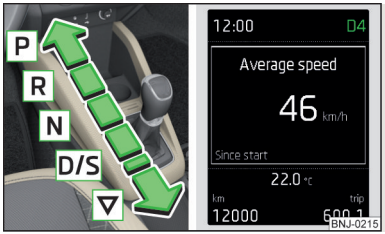


Fig. 118
Selector lever/display

Read and observe and on page 109 first.

When the ignition is switched on, the gearbox mode and the currently selected gear are indicated in the display » Fig. 118.

The following modes can be selected with the selector lever » Fig. 118.

P – Parking mode
The driven wheels are locked mechanically in this mode.

Parking mode must only be selected when the vehicle is stationary.

R - Reverse gear
Reverse gear can only be engaged when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is at idling speed.

N - Neutral
Power transmission to the drive wheels is interrupted in this mode.

D/S - mode for driving forward (Normal program) / mode for driving forward (Sport program)
The system switches from one mode to the other by moving the selector lever into the spring-loaded position ▽ » Fig. 118.

In mode **D** or **S**, the forward gears are shifted automatically depending on the engine load, the operation of the accelerator pedal, the vehicle speed, and the selected driving mode .

In mode **S**, the forward gears are shifted automatically up and down **at higher engine speeds** than in mode **D**.

Selector lever lock



Fig. 119
Shift lock button

Read and observe ! and ! on page 109 first.

The selector lever is locked in the **P** and **N** modes to prevent the forwards travel mode from being selected accidentally and setting the vehicle in motion.

The selector lever is locked only when the vehicle is stationary and at speeds up to 5 km/h.

The selector lever lock is indicated by the illumination of the warning light.

The selector lever is not locked when quickly moving across the position **N** (e.g. from **R** to **D/S**). This, for example, helps to rock out a vehicle that is stuck, e.g. in a bank of snow. The selector lever lock will engage if the lever is in position **N** for more than approx. 2 seconds without the brake pedal being depressed.

Releasing selector lever from mode P or N (selector lever lock)

› Press the brake pedal and the lock button at the same time in the direction of 1 » Fig. 119 .

Just depress the brake pedal, if you would like to change from the mode **N** to **D/S**.

Defective selector lever lock

If the selector lever lock is defective or its power supply is interrupted (e.g. discharged vehicle battery, faulty fuse), the selector lever can no longer be moved out of position **P** in the normal manner and the vehicle can no longer be driven. The selector lever must be emergency released » page 179.

Note

If you want to move the selector lever from mode **P** to mode **D/S** or vice versa, move the selector lever quickly. This prevents modes **R** or **N** from being selected accidentally.

Manual shifting (Tiptronic)

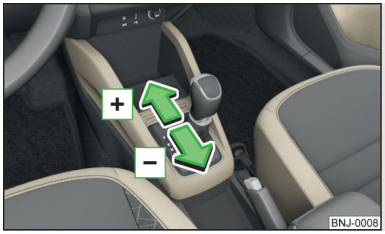


Fig. 120
Selector lever

Read and observe ! and ! on page 109 first.

Tiptronic mode makes it possible to manually shift gears on the selector lever. This mode can be selected both while halted and while driving.

The currently selected gear is indicated in the » Fig. 118 *on page 109* display.

The gearshift indicator must be observed when changing gear » page 39.

Switching to manual shifting

› Push the gear selector from position **D/S** towards the right, or left in a right-hand drive vehicle.

When switching to the manual shifting while driving, the current gear is maintained.

Shifting up gears

› Press the selector lever forwards + » Fig. 120.

Shifting down gears

› Press the selector lever backwards - » Fig. 120.

Note

- It may be advantageous to use manual gear shifting when driving downhill, for example. Shifting to a lower gear reduces the load on the brakes and hence brake wear » page 106.
- When accelerating, the gearbox automatically shifts up into the higher gear just before the maximum permissible engine speed is reached.
- If a lower gear is selected, the gearbox does not shift down until there is no risk of the engine overrevving.

Starting-off and driving

Read and observe ! and ! on page 109 first.

Starting off
› Start the engine.
› Firmly depress and hold the brake pedal.
› Press the lock button in the direction of 1 » Fig. 119 *on page 110* and hold.
› Move the selector lever into the desired position » page 109and then release the lock button.
› Release the brake pedal and accelerate.

Stopping (while the car is moving)
› Fully depress and hold the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.
› Keep holding the brake pedal until driving is resumed.

The selector lever position **N** does not have to be selected when stopping for a short time, such as at a cross roads.

Kickdown
The kickdown function allows you to achieve maximum acceleration by your vehicle while driving.

When the accelerator pedal is fully depressed, the kickdown function is activated in any forward driving mode.

The gearbox shifts down one or more gears depending on the vehicle speed and engine speed, and the vehicle accelerates.

The gearbox does not shift up into the highest gear until the engine has reached its maximum revolutions for this gear range.

! WARNING
Rapid acceleration, particularly on slippery roads, can lead to loss of control of the vehicle – there is a risk of an accident.

Running-in and economical driving

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Running-in 111
Tips for economical driving 111
DriveGreen function 112

The fuel consumption, degree of pollution and vehicle wear depend on driving style, road condition, weather conditions and the like.

Running-in

Driving in the engine
The engine has to be run in during the first 1 500 kilometres. During this period, the driving style decides on the quality of the driving-in process.

During the first 1,000 km ,we recommend not driving faster than 3/4 of the maximum permissible engine speed, not to drive at full throttle and not to use a trailer.

In the range of **1,000 to 1,500 kilometres,** the engine load can be increased up to the maximum permitted engine speed.

New tyres
New tyres have to be "run in" since they do not offer optimal grip at first.

Drive especially carefully for the first 500 km or so.

New brake pads
New brake pads have to first "grind in" because these do not initially have the best possible braking effect.

Drive especially carefully for the first 200 km or so.

Tips for economical driving

To achieve the lowest possible fuel consumption, the following instructions must be observed.

Looking ahead when driving
Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.

Change gear in an energy saving and timely manner
Observe the recommended gear » page 39.

Avoid full throttle and high speeds
Fuel consumption can be reduced by half if only three-quarters of the possible top speed of your vehicle is used.

Reducing idling
If the vehicle is fitted with the START - STOP system there is an automatic reduction of the idling. If the engine is stopped on vehicles without START-STOP system, such as when waiting in a traffic jam, the fuel economy is already greater after 30 - 40 s than the fuel quantity which is required for engine restart.

Avoid short distances
When driving a short distance of less than about 4 km, the engine cannot reach its operating temperature. As long as the engine has not reached operating temperature, the fuel consumption is significantly higher than with the engine hot.

Pay attention to the correct tyre inflation pressure being maintained
Further information » page 161.

Avoid unnecessary ballast
Per 100 kg of weight, consumption increases by about 0.3 l/100 km. At a speed of 100 - 120 km/h, a vehicle fitted with a roof rack cross member without a load will use about 10 % more fuel than normal due to the increased aerodynamic drag.

Saving electricity
Electrical consumers (e.g. seat heating, air conditioning and the like) should only be turned on for as long as necessary.

Use the cooling system economically
The air conditioning system compressor uses power from the engine when in cooling mode, which will affect the fuel consumption.

It recommended to open the windows or the doors of a vehicle for which the interior has been strongly heated through the effect of direct sunlight in order to allow the heated air to escape.

The cooling system should not be switched on if the windows are open.

DriveGreen function

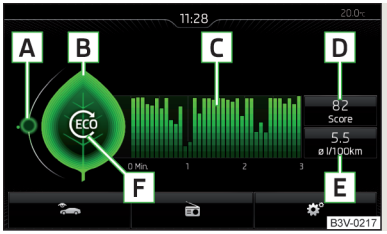


Fig. 121
Shown in the infotainment display

The DriveGreen function (hereinafter referred to only as DriveGreen) evaluates the driving efficiency based on the information respecting the driving style. Useful tips for reducing fuel consumption are also offered.

DriveGreen can be displayed on the Infotainment as follows.

› Press the button CAR in the Infotainment and then in the display the function keys one after the other → **DriveGreen**.

A driving liquid display
With the driving is liquid the display is near the green dot. When accelerating or braking, the indicator moves down or up.

B "Green leaf"
The leaf margin shown in green shows with a few seconds, the current drive efficiency. When driving economically there are several green layers on the edge of the leaf. Otherwise no green colour appears and the leaf can disappear completely.

C Graphical review summary
The evaluation of the driving economy during the last 3 minutes or 1.5 minutes (depending on type of Infotainment) is shown like a beam in 5-second increments. The current status is shown on the left and moves gradually to the right. The higher the green bars, the more economic the driving style is.

D Scoring
In the function key, the evaluation of driving efficiency is shown from the start in the range from 0 to 100 points. The higher the indicated value, the more economic the driving style is.

When you press the function key, a detailed assessment showing the driving efficiency during the last 30 minutes is shown.

If the trip from the start, takes less than 30 minutes, then the assessment takes in information from the previous trip (the bars are shown in dark green).

E Average fuel consumption
In the function key, the average fuel consumption from the start is displayed.

When you press the function key a detailed overview of the average fuel consumption during the last 30 minutes is shown.

If the trip from the start, takes less than 30 minutes, then the average fuel consumption takes in information from the previous trip (the bars are shown in dark green).

F Symbols in the display
The display may show the following four symbols, which give information on the current driving style.

- Ecological trip
- The current speed has a negative effect on fuel consumption.
- The driving is not liquid, drive with anticipation.
- 4 Recommended gear.

Tips for reducing fuel consumption
When tapping the "Page" the display shows useful tips on how to reduce fuel consumption. These tips can to be helpful to drive more economically.

Note
- Resetting the single-trip memory "from start" also resets the average consumption E and the driving assessment D.
- With some Infotainment types changing the units for the fuel consumption indicator causes the resetting of the average fuel consumption values E.

Avoiding damage to your vehicle

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Driving Tips 113
Driving through water 113

This section of the manual contains important information on preventing damage to the vehicle while driving.

Driving Tips

Only drive on such roads and in such terrain, which match the vehicle parameters » page 192, *Technical data*as well as your driving skills.

The driver is always responsible for deciding whether the vehicle can handle travelling in the given terrain.

WARNING
- Always adjust your driving to the current terrain and weather conditions. Excessive speed or incorrect driving manoeuvres can cause damage to the vehicle and lead to serious injuries.
- Combustible objects such as dry leaves or twigs caught under the base of the vehicle could ignite on hot vehicle parts - risk of fire!

CAUTION
- Pay attention to the ground clearance of the vehicle! When driving over objects which are larger than the ground clearance, the vehicle can get damaged.
- Any objects that get trapped under the vehicle floor must be removed as soon as possible. These objects can damage the fuel lines, the brake system, seals and other parts of the vehicle.
- Drive slowly in unknown terrain and watch out for unexpected obstacles, such as potholes, rocks, stumps, etc.
- Check up on confusing sections of unpaved roads before travelling on them and consider whether such travelling is possible without risk.

Driving through water

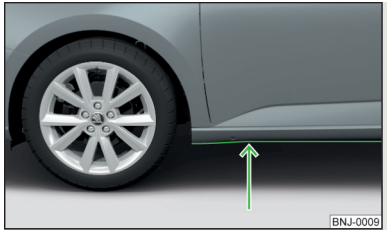


Fig. 122
Maximum permissible water level when driving through water

The following instructions must be observed if vehicle damage is to be avoided when driving through water (e.g. flooded roads).

› Therefore, always determine the depth of the water before driving through water.

The water level must not reach above the web of the lower sill » Fig. 122.

› Do not drive any faster than at a walking speed.

At a higher speed, a water wave can form in front of the vehicle, which can cause water to penetrate into the engine's air intake system or other parts of the vehicle.

› Never stop in the water, do not reverse and do not switch the engine off.

CAUTION

- Should water penetrate into the intake system of the engine, there is a risk of serious damage to the engine parts!
- When driving through water, some vehicle parts such as chassis, electrics or transmissions may be severely damaged.
- Oncoming vehicles can generate water waves which can exceed the permissible water level for your vehicle.
- Potholes, mud or rocks can be hidden under the water, making it difficult or impossible to drive through water.
- Do not drive through salt water, as the salt can cause corrosion. A vehicle coming into contact with salt water is to be thoroughly rinsed with fresh water.

Assist systems

Braking and stabilisation systems

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Stability Control (ESC) 114
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 115
Traction control (TCS) 115
Electronic differential lock (EDL and XDS) 115
Brake Assist (HBA) 115
Hill Start Assist (HHC) 116
Multi collision brake (MCB) 116

This chapter describes the functions of the brake and stabilization systems. The error display is in Chapter » page 31, *Warning lights*.

The brake and stabilization systems are automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on, unless otherwise indicated.

WARNING

- A lack of fuel can cause irregular engine running or cause the engine to shut down. The brake assist systems could then fail to function – risk of accident!
- The increased safety provided by the brake assist systems must not tempt you to take safety risks – risk of accident!
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.

Stability Control (ESC)

Read and observe ! on page 114 first.

The ESC improves vehicle stability in dynamic driving situations, such as when the vehicle starts to skid.

The ESC monitors whether the desired direction of the current vehicle motion is occurring. In case of any deviation (e.g. oversteer), the ESC automatically brakes individual wheels to maintain the desired direction.

During an intervention of the system, the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster.

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

Read and observe ! on page 114 first.

ABS prevents the wheels locking when braking. Thereby, it helps the driver to maintain control of the vehicle.

The intervention of the ABS is noticeable from the **pulsating movements of the brake pedal** which is accompanied by noises.

When the ABS system is active, do not pump the brakes or lift off the brake pedal.

Traction control (TCS)



Fig. 123
System button: Activating/deactivating TCS

Read and observe ! on page 114 first.

TCS prevents the spinning of the wheels of the driven axle. TCS reduces the drive power transmitted to the wheels in the case of slipping wheels. Thereby, for example, driving on road surfaces with low grip is made easier.

During a TCS intervention, the indicator light flashes in the instrument cluster.

Activating/deactivating TCS
The activation or deactivation of TCS can be done, depending on equipment, in one of the following ways.
› Infotainment » *Operating instructions Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.
› By briefly pressing the symbol key » Fig. 123.

Upon deactivation, in the instrument cluster the indicator light illuminates and the display shows the following message.
M **Traction control (ASR) deactivated.**
S **ASR OFF**

Upon activation, in the instrument cluster the indicator turns and the display shows the following message.
M **Traction control (ASR) activated.**
S **ASR ON**

The TCS should normally always be enabled. The system should be deactivated only in the following situations, for example.
› When driving with snow chains.
› When driving in deep snow or on a very loose surface.
› When "rocking a car free" when it has become stuck.

Electronic differential lock (EDL and XDS)

Read and observe ! on page 114 first.

EDL
EDL prevents the turning of the respective wheel of the driven axle. EDL brakes the spinning wheel, if necessary, and transmits the driving force to the other driving wheel. Driving becomes easier on road surfaces with different traction under each wheel of the driven axle.

EDL switches off automatically to avoid excessive heat generation on the brake of the wheel being braked. Once the brakes have cooled down, there is an automatic re-activation of EDL.

XDS
XDL is an extension to the electronic differential lock. XDL does not respond to traction, but to the load relief of the inner front wheel of the driving axle during fast cornering.

The automatic brake intervention on the brake of the wheel with reduced load prevents the wheel from spinning. Thus, the traction is improved and the vehicle can continue to follow the desired track.

Brake Assist (HBA)

Read and observe ! on page 114 first.

HBA increases the braking effect and helps to shorten the braking distance. ▸

The HBA is activated by very rapid depression of the brake pedal. To achieve the shortest possible braking distance, the brake pedal must be applied firmly until the vehicle has come to a complete standstill.

HBA is automatically switched off when the brake pedal is released.

Hill Start Assist (HHC)

Read and observe ! on page 114 first.

HHC allows you to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal without having to use the handbrake when pulling away on a gradient.

The system holds the brake pressure produced by the activation of the brake pedal for approx. 2 seconds after the brake pedal is released.

HHC is active on slopes of >5 % when the driver door is closed. HHC is always only active on slopes pulling away forwards or in reverse.

Multi collision brake (MCB)

Read and observe ! on page 114 first.

The MCB helps to decrease speed after a collision through automatic braking interventions and to stabilize the vehicle. This reduces the risk of a subsequent crash due to uncontrolled vehicle movement.

The automatic brake interventions can take place only if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ There was a front, side and rear-end collision of a certain severity.
- ✓ The impact speed was higher than approx. 10 km/h.
- ✓ The brakes, the ESL and other required electrical systems remain functional after impact.
- ✓ The accelerator pedal is not actuated.

Parking assistance (ParkPilot)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Function 117
Display in the Infotainment display 117
Activation / deactivation 118
Automatic system activation when moving forward 118

The parking aid (hereinafter referred to only as system) draws attention via acoustic signals or the Infotainment display when manoeuvring around obstacles in the vicinity of the vehicle.

! WARNING

- The system only serves as an assistance and does not relieve the driver of the responsibility for the vehicle operation.
- Moving persons or objects may not be recognised by the system sensors.
- Under certain circumstances, surfaces of certain objects and types of clothing cannot reflect the system signals. For this reason, such people or objects may not be recognised by the system sensors.
- External noise sources may affect the signals of the system sensors. Under adverse conditions, this may cause objects or people to be not recognised by the system.
- Before reversing, you should make sure that there are no small obstacles, such as rocks, thin posts, trailer drawbars etc. in front or behind your vehicle. Such obstacles may not be recognised by the system sensors.

! CAUTION

- Keep the system sensors » Fig. 124 *on page 117* clean, snow-and ice-free and do not cover with any objects of any kind, otherwise the system functioning may be impaired.
- Under adverse weather conditions (heavy rain, water vapour, very low or high temperatures etc.) system function may be limited "incorrect obstacle detection ".
- Additionally installed accessories such as e.g. bicycle carriers can impair the system function.

Function

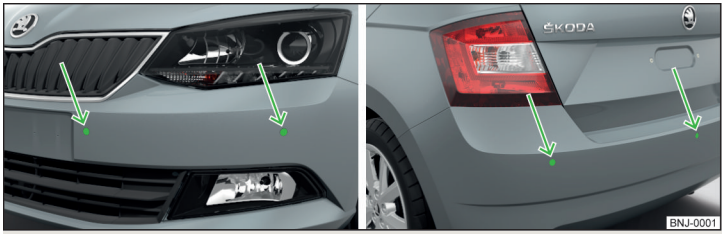


Fig. 124 **Location of the sensors: front / rear**

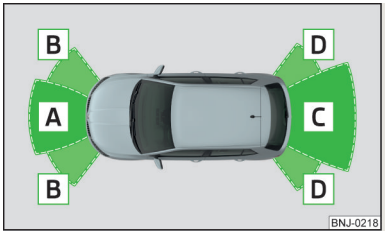


Fig. 125
Sampled areas and range of the sensors

Read and observe ! and ! on page 116 first.

The system uses ultrasound waves to calculate the distance between the bumper and an obstacle. The ultrasonic sensors are, depending on vehicle equipment,, located in the back or in the front bumper » Fig. 124.

Depending on the equipment, the following system versions can exist » Fig. 125.
› Version 1: warns of obstacles in the areas C, D.
› Version 2: warns of obstacles in the regions A, B, C, D.

Approximate range of sensors (in cm)

Area » Fig. 125	Version 1 (3 sensors)	Version 2 (7 sensors)
A	-	120
B	-	60
C	160	160
D	60	60

Audible signals
The interval between the acoustic signals becomes shorter as the clearance is reduced. A continuous tone sounds from a distance of approx. 30 cm - danger area. **From this moment on do not continue driving!**

The acoustic signals can be set in the Infotainment» *Operating instructions Infotainment* , chapter *CAR - Vehicle Settings* .

Towing a trailer
When towing, or when another accessory is connected to the trailer socket only the areas A and B» Fig. 125 are active in the system.

Note
The signal tones for front obstacle recognition are factory-set to be higher than for rear obstacle recognition.

Display in the Infotainment display

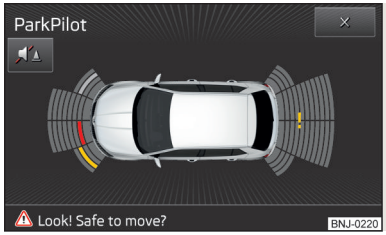


Fig. 126
Display

Read and observe ! and ! on page 116 first.

Function keys and obstacle warning » Fig. 126

✖ / ⮌ Depending on the Infotainment type: Switching off park assistant display.

/ Switching audible parking signals on/off.

⚠ Message: **Look! Safe to move?**

■ Colour of an object detected in the collision area (the distance to the obstacle is less than 30 cm). Stop driving in the direction of an obstacle!

■ Colour of an object detected in the manoeuvring area (the distance to the obstacle is more than 30 cm).

□ Colour of an object detected in the outside the manoeuvring area (the distance to the obstacle is more than 30 cm).

! System failure (there is no indication of obstacles).

Activation / deactivation



Fig. 127
System key (option 2)

Read and observe ! and ! on page 116 first.

Activation
The activation of the system is initiated when the reverse gear is engaged, or vehicles with the **Variant 2**, also by pressing the symbol key » Fig. 127.

This is confirmed by a short acoustic signal (the symbol in the button lights up).

Deactivation
On vehicles with **Version 1**, the system can be deactivated by moving out of reverse gear.

For vehicles with **Version 2**, the system is deactivated by pressing the symbol button or automatically at a speed over 10 km/h (the symbol in the button goes out).

Displaying an error
If a warning signal sounds for about 3 seconds after activating the system and there is no obstacle close to your car, this indicates a system fault. The fault is also indicated by the symbol flashing in the button. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Note
The system can only be activated with the symbol key at a speed of below approx. 10 km / hr.

Automatic system activation when moving forward



Fig. 128
Infotainment display: Display with automatic activation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 116 first.

The automatic system activation occurs when moving forward at a speed below 10 km / h when the vehicle approaches an obstacle.

After activation, the following is shown in the left pane of the Infotainment display » Fig. 128.

Acoustic signals are sounded as of a distance from the obstacle of around 50 cm.

The automatic display can be enabled or disabled in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

Speed control system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Functioning 119
Operating Description 119

The Cruise Control System (CCS) maintains a set speed without you having to actuate the accelerator pedal.

The status where the CCS maintains the speed is referred to hereinafter as the **control**.

WARNING

- The CCS only serves as an assistance and does not relieve the driver of the responsibility for the vehicle operation.
- Always adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- After pressing the clutch pedal, no interrupted control occurs! For example, if a different gear is engaged and the clutch pedal is released, control is continued.

Functioning

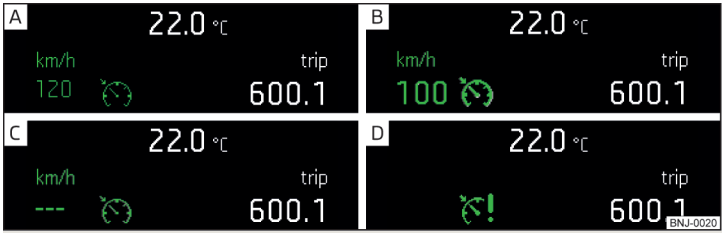


Fig. 129 **Maxi DOT display: Examples of status displays the CCS**



Fig. 130 **Segment display: Examples of status displays the CCS**

Read and observe ! on page 119 first.

GRA status displays » Fig. 129, » Fig. 130

- A Speed set, but control is inactive.
- B Control is active.
- C No speed set.
- D System fault - seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Basic requirements for starting the control

- ✓ The CCS is activated.
- ✓ On vehicles with a **manual transmission**, the second gear or higher is engaged.
- ✓ On vehicles with an **automatic transmission**, the selector lever is in the **D/S** position or in the Tiptronic position.
- ✓ The current speed is higher than approx. 20 km/h.

This is only possible within the range which is permitted by the power output and braking power of the engine.

WARNING

If the engine power and engine braking effect is insufficient to maintain the set speed, vehicle operation must be taken over!

Operating Description

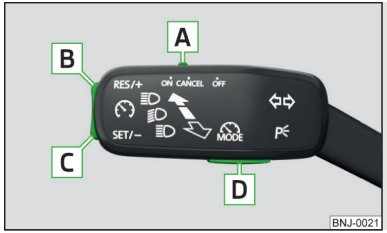


Fig. 131
Cruise control system controls

Read and observe ! on page 119 first.

Overview of the control elements of the CCS » Fig. 131

- A **OFF** Deactivate CCS (delete set speed)
- **CANCEL** Interrupt control (sprung position)

	ON	Activate CCS (control deactivated)
B	**RES/+**	Take control again[a] / Increase speed
C	**SET/–**	Start control / reduce speed
D	**MODE**	Switch between GRA and Speed Limiter » page 120

[a] If no speed is set the current speed is adopted.

At the start of the regulation the GRA regulates the vehicle to the current speed, and this speed is shown on the instrument cluster display. The warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster.

Automatic control interruption
Automatic control interruption occurs if any of the following conditions are met.
› The brake pedal is operated.
› When one of the brake assist systems (e.g. ESC) intervenes.
› Through an airbag deployment.
› The key **MODE** is actuated.

WARNING
- Always deactivate the cruise control system after use to prevent the system being enabled unintentionally.
- Control may only be resumed if the set speed is not too high for the current traffic conditions.

Note
- During control, speed can be increased by pressing the accelerator pedal. Releasing the accelerator pedal will cause the speed to drop again to the set speed.
- By pressing the **MODE** button during the regulation this is cancelled and the Speed Limiter is activated.

Speed limiter

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation ____ 120
Operation description ____ 121

The Speed Limiter limits the maximum driving speed to the set speed limit.

This limit can only be exceeded by depressing the accelerator pedal fully.

The condition in which the Speed Limiter monitors a potential set speed limit excess is referred to as **Regulation**.

WARNING
- The speed limiter only serves as an assistance and does not relieve the driver of the responsibility for the vehicle operation.
- Always adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.

Operation

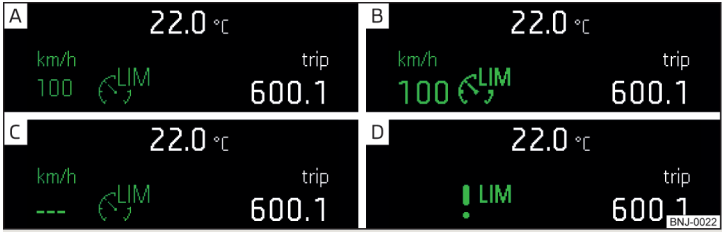


Fig. 132 **Maxi DOT display: Examples of Speed Limiter status displays**



Fig. 133 **Segment display: Examples of Speed Limiter status displays**

Read and observe ! on page 120 first.

Status display of the Speed Limiter» Fig. 132, » Fig. 133

A Speed limit set, but regulation is inactive.
B Control is active.
C No speed limit set.
D System fault - seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Basic requirements for starting the control

✓ The Speed Limiter is activated.
✓ The current speed is higher than approx. 30 km/h.

Operation description

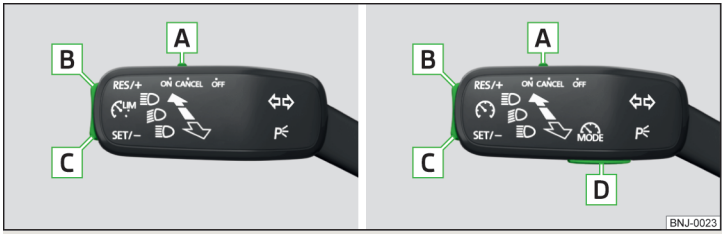


Fig. 134 **Operating elements of the speed limiter: Vehicle with Speed Limiter / vehicle with GRA and Speed Limiter**

Read and observe ! on page 120 first.

Overview of the control elements of the Speed Limiter » Fig. 134

A	**OFF**	Speed Limiter disable (set limit delete)
	CANCEL	Interrupt control (sprung position)
	ON	Activate Speed Limiter (regulation deactivated) For vehicles with GRA and Speed Limiter, the GRA is activated by the switch in the **ON** position by being adjusted. The activation of the Speed Limiter occurs only after pressing the button **MODE**.
B	**RES/+**	Take control again [a]/ Increase speed - short press (in increments of 1 km/h), long press (in increments of 10 km/h)
C	**SET/–**	Start regulation / reduce speed - short press (in increments of 1 km/h), long press (in increments of 10 km/h)
D	**MODE**	Switch between GRA » page 118 and Speed Limiter

[a] If no speed limit is set, the current speed is set as the speed limit.

At the start of the regulation, the current speed is set as the speed limit and displayed in the instrument cluster display. The warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster.

Exceeding the speed limit during the regulation
If exceeding the speed limit is required during the regulation, for example when overtaking, then the accelerator pedal is to be fully pressed.

When exceeding the speed limit, an acoustic signal sounds and the warning light in the instrument cluster flashes.

The regulation is resumed once the speed has fallen below the set limit.

! CAUTION

When driving downhill, exceeding the set speed limit may occur. When exceeding the limit, an acoustic signal sounds and the warning light in the instrument cluster flashes.

i Note

By pressing the **MODE** button during the regulation this is cancelled and the GRA is activated.

Front Assistant

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Radar sensor 122
Operation 123
Distance warning (dangerous distance) 123
Warning and automatic braking 123
Disable / enable 124
Information messages 124

The Front Assistant (from here on only referred to as the system) warns you of the danger of a collision with a vehicle or another obstacle in front of the vehicle and tries to avoid a collision or mitigate its consequences by automatically applying the brakes as appropriate.

The area in front of the vehicle is monitored by a radar sensor » Fig. 135 *on page 122*.

WARNING

- The system only serves as an assistance and does not relieve the driver of the responsibility for the vehicle operation.
- The system has physical and system-related limitations. For this reason, the driver may experience some undesired or delayed system responses in certain situations. You should therefore always be alert and ready to intervene!
- Always adapt your speed and safety proximity to the vehicle ahead to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- The increased passenger protection afforded through the system must not tempt you to take greater risks than otherwise – risk of accident!
- The system does not respond to crossing or oncoming objects.

CAUTION

In case of failure of more than one brake light on the vehicle or on the electrically connected trailer, the system becomes unavailable.

Radar sensor



Fig. 135
Mounting location of the radar sensor

Read and observe ! and ! on page 122 first.

The radar sensor » Fig. 135(Hereinafter referred to simply as the sensor) may detect objects by radiating and receiving electromagnetic waves.

The sensor function may be impaired in the events of one of the following.
› The sensor is soiled by mud, snow and the like.
› The area in front and around the sensor is obscured by labels, auxiliary lights and similar.
› When visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).

If the sensor is dirty or covered, the corresponding message appears on the display of the instrument cluster » page 124, *Information messages*.

WARNING

- If you suspect that the sensor is damaged, deactivate the system. Have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.
- The sensor can become misaligned by collisions or by damage to the front of the vehicle, the wheel arch or the underside of the vehicle. This can lead to impaired function of the sensor - risk of accidents! Have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.
- The area in front and around the senor should not be obscured by labels, auxiliary lights and similar. This can lead to impaired function of the sensor - risk of accidents!

CAUTION

Remove the snow with a brush and the ice with a solvent-free de-icer.

Operation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 122 first.

The system support is provided in the following manner.
› Alerts you about a dangerous proximity to the vehicle ahead.
› Warns you of an impending collision.
› Prepares the brakes for emergency braking prior to a detected danger.
› Assists with a brake action triggered by the driver.
› If the driver fails to respond to a detected danger, an automatic braking action is performed.

The system can work only if the following basic conditions are met.
✓ The system is activated.
✓ The TCS is activated » page 115, *Traction control (TCS)*.
✓ The vehicle is moving forwards at a speed of more than approx. 5 km/h.

Note

The system can be impaired or may not be available, for example when driving in "sharp "curves or with an ESC engagement » page 114.

Distance warning (dangerous distance)

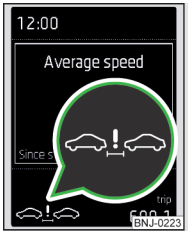


Fig. 136
Symbols in the instrument cluster: Note (dangerous proximity)

Read and observe ! and ! on page 122 first.

The display of the distance warning is for vehicles with MAXI DOT display.

If a safe interval to the vehicle ahead falls below a minimum the display of the instrument cluster shows the symbol » Fig. 136.

Immediately increase the proximity if the current traffic situation allows you to do so!

The proximity at which the warning is displayed depends on the current speed.

The warning may occur when driving between about 60 km/h and 210 km/h.

Warning and automatic braking



Fig. 137
Symbols in the instrument cluster: Warning or emergency braking at low speed

Read and observe ! and ! on page 122 first.

Emergency braking at low speed
In a driving speed range of about 5 km/h to about 30 km/h the automatic braking action is not preceded by a warning. With an immediate impact hazard automatic braking is done with the breaking force increasing in stages.

With automatic braking the symbol appears » Fig. 137 in the display.

Advance warning
If the system detects a risk of collision, the symbol » Fig. 137 appears in the display and you will hear an acoustic signal.

At the same time, the braking system is prepared for possible emergency braking.

The pre-warning display can occur in the following situations.
› If there is a risk of collision with a moving obstacle in a driving speed range of about 30 km/h to about 210 km/h.
› There is a risk of a collision with a stationary moving obstacle in a vehicle speed range of approximately 30 km/h to about 85 km/h.

With a warning the brake pedal must be pressed or the moving obstacle is to be avoided!

Acute alert
If the driver does not react to the advance warning, the system briefly applies the brake automatically via an active brake intervention to draw attention to the potential danger of a collision again.

Automatic Braking
If the driver fails to respond to the acute warning, the system starts to apply the brakes automatically with increasing stopping power in several stages.

Brake assist
If the driver brakes inadequate with an impending collision, the system automatically increases braking force.

The braking assistance only occurs as long as the brake pedal is being firmly pressed down.

Note

- If an automatic brake intervention is triggered by the system, the pressure in the brake system increases and the brake pedal cannot be operated with the normal pedal stroke.
- The automatic braking interventions can be cancelled by pressing the accelerator pedal or by steering intervention.

Disable / enable

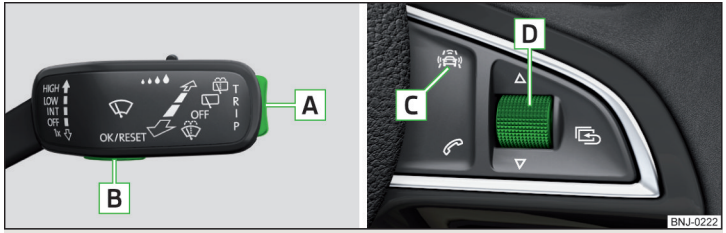


Fig. 138 **Buttons / wheel: on the operating lever / on the multifunction steering wheel**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 122 first.

The function is automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.

The system should only be disabled in exceptional cases » !.

On vehicles with the MAXI DOT display, the system can be activated / deactivated in the main menu in menu item **Assist systems** » page 42.

Deactivation / activation in vehicles with segment display

Button » Fig. 138	Action	Operation
A	Press and hold at the top or down	Show menu item Front Assist
B	Press briefly	Confirm entry (disable / enable)

Deactivation / activation in vehicles with multi-function steering wheel

Button / dial » Fig. 138	Action	Operation
C	Press briefly	Show menu item Front Assist
D	Press briefly	Confirm entry (disable / enable)

Disable / enable and setting in the Infotainment
In the Infotainment the entire system or the functions warning and distance warning can be disabled / enabled » *Operating instructions Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - Vehicle Settings*.

After switching off and switching on the ignition system several times the functions warning and distance warning remain either activated or deactivated depending on the last setting.

WARNING
In the following situations, Front Assistant should be switched off for safety reasons.
- When the vehicle is being towed away.
- When the vehicle is on a rolling test bench.
- If an unfounded warning or a system action was taken.
- When on a truck, or a car ferry service or similar.

Information messages

Read and observe ! and ! on page 122 first.

The warning symbols are shown in the instrument cluster display.

Front Assist: no sensor view.

FRONT ASSIST NO SENSOR VIEW

The sensor is soiled or covered.

Stop the car, switch off the engine and clean the sensor or eliminate the disturbance causing the lack of visibility » Fig. 135 *on page 122*.

If after engine start the message persists, then the help of a professional organisation is required.

M **Front Assist not available.**

S **FRONT ASSIST NOT AVAILABLE**

The system is not available for an unknown reason.

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and then start it again.

If after engine start the message persists, then the help of a professional organisation is required.

Fatigue detection

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Function 125
Information messages 125

The fatigue detection system (hereinafter referred to only as system) recommends the driver taking a break from driving when, because of the driver's steering behaviour, driver fatigue can be detected.

WARNING

- For the driving ability is always the driver's responsibility. Never drive if you feel tired.
- The system may not detect all cases where a break is needed.
- Therefore, take regular, sufficient breaks during long trips.
- There will be no system warning during the so-called micro-sleep.

Note

- In some situations, the system may evaluate the driving incorrectly and thus mistakenly recommend a break (e.g. sporty driving, adverse weather conditions or poor road conditions).
- The system is designed primarily for use on motorways.

Function

Read and observe ! on page 125 first.

From the start of the journey, the system evaluates steering behaviour. If, while driving, there have been changes in the steering behaviours that are evaluated by the system as indicating possible fatigue, a break recommendation is issued.

The system evaluates steering behaviour and recommends a break at speeds of 65 - 200 km/h.

The system detects a break from driving when one of the following conditions is met.

› The vehicle is stopped and the ignition switched off.
› The vehicle is stopped, the seat belt removed and the driver's door opened.
› The vehicle is stopped for more than 15 minutes.

If none of these conditions are met or if the driving style is not changed, the system recommends a driving break again after 15 minutes.

The system can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

Information messages

Read and observe ! on page 125 first.

The icon appears and the following message for a few seconds in the display of the instrument cluster and the following message.

M **Driver alert. Take a break!**

S **DRIVER ALERT TAKE A BREAK**

An audible signal is also emitted.

Tyre pressure monitoring

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Save tyre pressure values 126
Save tyre pressure values and infotainment display 126
Save tyre pressure values by pressing a button 127

The tyre pressure monitoring function monitors (hereinafter referred to only as a system) the tyre pressure while driving.

When changing the tyre inflation pressure, the warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster and an audible signal is heard.

Information on the procedure for the indication of change in tyre pressure values » page 34.

The system can only function properly if the tyres have the prescribed tyre pressure and this pressure values are stored in the system.

WARNING

- The correct tyre pressure values is always the driver's responsibility. The tyre pressure should be checked regularly » page 161.
- The system cannot warn in case of very rapid loss of tyre pressure, e.g. in the event of a sudden puncture.

Save tyre pressure values

Read and observe ! on page 126 first.

The tyre pressure valuesare always stored in the system, if one of the following events is present.

› Change of tyre pressure values.
› Change one or more wheels.
› Change in position of a wheel on the vehicle.
› The warning light in the instrument cluster.

The storage of the tyre pressure values depends on equipment, either in the infotainment or by pressing a button.

WARNING

Before storing the tyre pressures they must be inflated to the specified inflation pressure » page 161. If incorrect pressure values are storedthe system may not warn even with a tyre pressure that is too low.

CAUTION

The tyre pressure values should be stored every 10 000 km or once a year to ensure proper system function.

Save tyre pressure values and infotainment display



Fig. 139
Button for storing the pressure values / Example of the display: the system indicates a tyre pressure change front left

Read and observe ! on page 126 first.

› Inflate all of the tyres to the specified inflation pressure.
› Switch on the ignition.
› The Infotainment switches on.
› Press the button CAR in the Infotainment and then in the display the function keys one after the other , **Vehicle status**.
› By using the function keys ◀▶ select the menu item *Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator*.
› Press the button **SET** » Fig. 139.

In addition, follow the instructions that appear on the display.

A message in the display informs about the storage of the tyre pressure values.

Note

When a warning light in the instrument cluster appears, the affected tyre can be displayed on the infotainment » Fig. 139.

Save tyre pressure values by pressing a button



Fig. 140
Button for storing the pressure values

Read and observe ! on page 126 first.

› Inflate all of the tyres to the specified inflation pressure.
› Switch on the ignition.
› Press the symbol key » Fig. 140 symbol icon and hold down.

The warning light in the instrument cluster illuminates.

An acoustic signal sounds and the warning light extinguishes informs that the storage of the tyre pressure values has taken place.

› Press the symbol key icon button.

Hitch and trailer

Hitch

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Description 128
Adjusting the ready position 128
A correctly set ready position 129
Assembling the bar ball - 1. Step 129
Assembling the bar ball - 2. Step 130
Check proper fitting 130
Removing the bar ball - 1. Step 131
Removing the bar ball - 2. Step 131
Accessories 132

The maximum trailer drawbar load is **50 kg**.

! WARNING

- Check that the ball head is seated correctly and is secured in the mounting recess before starting any journey.
- Do not use the ball head if it is not correctly inserted in the mounting recess.
- Do not use the towing equipment if it is damaged or incomplete.
- Do not modify or adapt the towing equipment in any way.
- Never release the ball head while the trailer is still coupled.
- Keep the mounting recess of the towing equipment clean at all times. Such dirt prevents the ball head from being attached securely.

! CAUTION

- Take care with the tow bar - there is a risk of damaging the paint on the bumper.
- When the ball rod is removed, always place the cover onto the mounting recess - there is a danger of soiling the mounting recess.

i Note

- Operation and maintenance of towing device » page 144.
- Tow the vehicle by means of the detachable ball rod » page 177.

Description

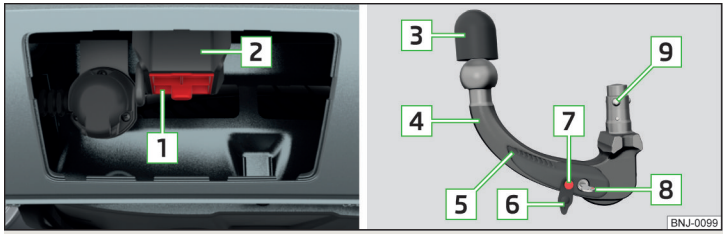


Fig. 141 **Carrier for the towing device / tow bar**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 127 first.

The ball head can be removed and is kept in the spare wheel well or in a compartment for the spare wheel in the luggage compartment.

Support for the Towing hitch and tow bar » Fig. 141

1 Cover for the mounting recess
2 Mounting recess
3 Dust cap
4 Ball head
5 Operating lever
6 Lock cap
7 Release pin
8 Key
9 Locking ball

Note

If you lose the key, please get in touch with a specialist garage.

Adjusting the ready position

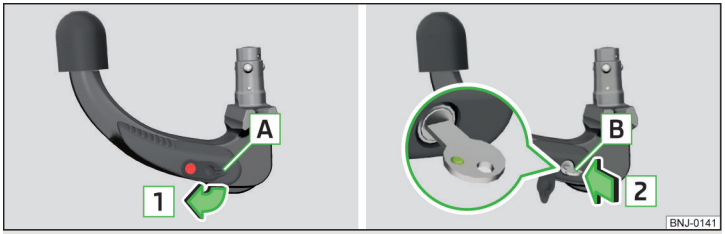


Fig. 142 **Remove cap from the lock / insert key into the lock**

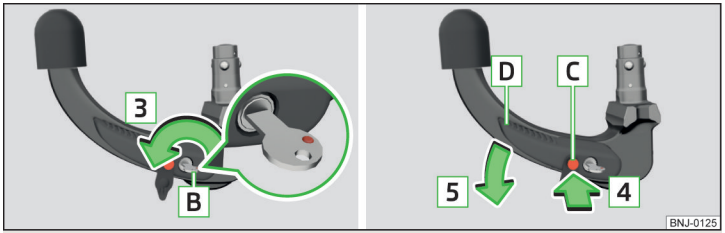


Fig. 143 **Lock unlock / press release bolt and lever and push**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 127 first.

The tow bar must be set prior to installation to the standby position » page 129, *A correctly set ready position*.

If this is not in the standby position, then this is set to the standby position as follows.

› Grip the tow bar below the protective cap.
› Remove the cover A from the lock in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 142.
› Insert the key B into the lock in the direction of arrow 2, so that its green marker points upward.
› Turn the key B in the direction of arrow 3 so that the red marking points upwards » Fig. 143.

› Push in the release bolt C in the direction of arrow 4 until it stops and simultaneously press the operating lever D in the direction of arrow 5 until it stops.

The operating lever D remains locked in this position.

A correctly set ready position

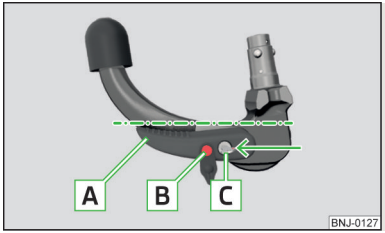


Fig. 144
Ready position

Read and observe ! and ! on page 127 first.

Correctly adjusted standby position » Fig. 144

✓ The operating lever A is locked in the lower position.
✓ The release bolts B can be moved.
✓ The red mark on the key C is pointing upwards.

The ball bar is thus set ready for installation.

! CAUTION

In the ready position, the key cannot be removed nor turned to a different position.

Assembling the bar ball - 1. Step

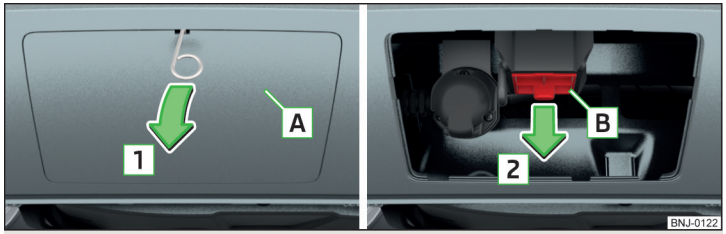


Fig. 145 **Remove cover cap: on the rear bumper / for the receiving shaft**

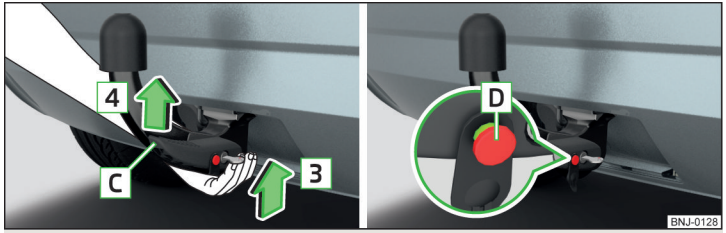


Fig. 146 **Insert ball rod / trigger bolt in the extended state**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 127 first.

Preliminary work

Before installing the tow bar the following work must be carried out.

› Remove the cover cap A » Fig. 145 in the direction of arrow 1 using the on-board tool clamp for pulling off the wheel trims » page 167.
› Remove cover cap B in the direction of arrow 2 » !.

The tow bar must be set to the standby position » page 129, *A correctly set ready position*. If this is not in the standby position, then it must be set to the standby position » page 128, *Adjusting the ready position*.

Fitting

› Grip the tow bar **from underneath** » Fig. 146 and insert into the mounting recess in arrow direction 3 until you hear it click into place » !.

The operating lever C **automatically** turns upwards in the direction of arrow 4 and the release pin D pops out (both its red and green parts are visible) » !.

If the operating lever C does not turn automatically, or if the release pin D does not pop out, remove the tow bar from the mounting recess by turning the operating lever C downwards as far as it can go. Clean the contact surfaces on the tow bar and the mounting recess.

! WARNING

- Carefully remove the cap for the mounting recess B - there is a risk of hand injury.
- Keep your hands outside the operating lever's range of motion when attaching the ball head – there is a risk of finger injury.
- Never attempt to pull the operating lever upwards forcibly to turn the key. Doing so would mean the ball head is not attached correctly.

! CAUTION

Remove the cover A from the rear bumper with care - there is a risk of paint damage to the bumper and the cap.

i Note

Store the caps A and B » Fig. 145 in a suitable place in the luggage compartment after removal.

Assembling the bar ball - 2. Step

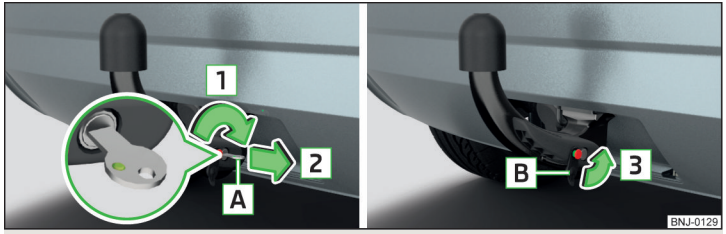


Fig. 147 **Secure the lock and remove key / place cap on lock**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 127 first.

› Initially carry out the first step of the ball rod assembly » page 129.

› Turn the key A in the direction of arrow 1 so that the green marking points upwards » Fig. 147.
› Remove the key in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Fit and press in the cap B on the hand-wheel lock in the direction of the arrow 3 » !.
› Check the ball head for secure mounting » page 130, *Check proper fitting*.

! CAUTION

After removing the key, **always** replace the cover on the lock – risk of lock getting dirty.

Check proper fitting

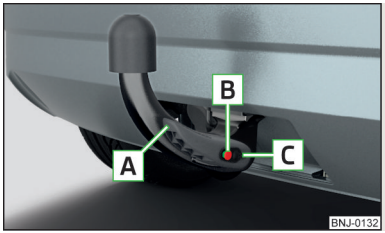


Fig. 148
Correctly secured ball head

Read and observe ! and ! on page 127 first.

Check that the ball head is fitted properly each time before use.

Correctly secured ball head » Fig. 148

✓ The ball head does not come out of the mounting recess even after heavy "shaking".
✓ Operating lever A is located as far up as possible.
✓ The release pin B is completely exposed (both its red and green parts are visible).
✓ The key is removed.
✓ The cap B is on the hand-wheel.

! WARNING

Do not use the towing equipment unless the ball head has been properly locked - risk of accident.

Removing the bar ball - 1. Step

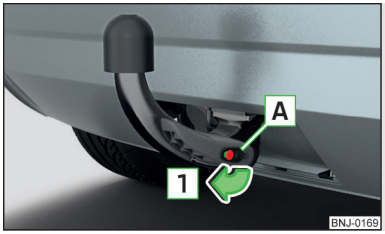


Fig. 149
Remove the cap from the lock

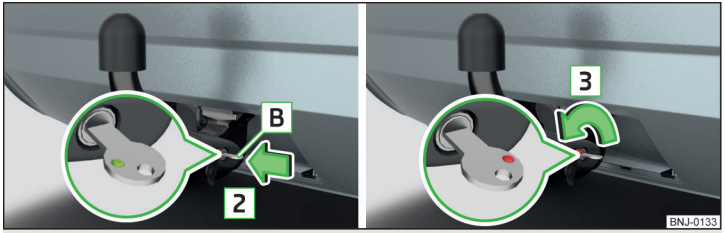


Fig. 150 **Insert the key into the lock / unlock the lock**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 127 first.

› Remove the cover A from the lock in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 149.
› Insert the key B into the lock in the direction of arrow 2, so that its green marker points upward » Fig. 150.
› Turn the key in the direction of arrow 3 so that the red marking points upwards.

! WARNING

Never remove the tow bar while the trailer is still coupled.

i Note

We recommend that you put the protective cap on the ball before removing the ball head.

Removing the bar ball - 2. Step

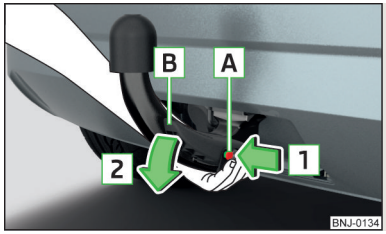


Fig. 151
Release tow bar

Read and observe ! and ! on page 127 first.

Removing

› Initially carry out the first step of the ball rod disassembly » page 131.
› Grasp the ball head from **underneath** » Fig. 151.
› Push in the release bolt A in the direction of arrow 1 until it stops and simultaneously press the operating lever B in the direction of arrow 2 until it stops.

The ball head is released in this position and falls freely into the hand. If it does not fall freely into the hand, use your other hand to push it upwards.

At the same time, the ball head latches into the ready position and is thus ready to be built-in » !.

Subsequent steps

After removing the tow bar the following work must be carried out.

› Insert the cover B » Fig. 145 *on page 129* in the opposite direction to arrow 2.
› Fix the cap A » Fig. 145 *on page 129* aligning it with "check mark" in the lower bumper area.
› Push the cap in first on the left and right and then at the top.

! WARNING

Never allow the ball head to remain unsecured in the boot. This could cause damage to the boot upon sudden braking, and could put the safety of the occupants at risk.

CAUTION

- If the operating lever B is held firm and not pushed downwards as far as it can go, it will go back up after the ball head is removed and will not latch into the ready position. The ball head then needs to be brought into this position before the next time it is fitted » page 128, *Adjusting the ready position*.
- Place the tow bar in the standby position, with the key upwards, and store in the box - otherwise there is a risk of damage to the key!
- Do not use excessive force when handling the operating lever (e.g. do not step on it).

Note

Clean any dirt from the ball head before stowing it away in the box with the vehicle tool kit.

Accessories

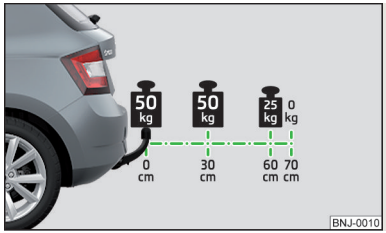


Fig. 152
Depiction of the maximum permissible protrusion of the ball head of the towing hitch and of the permissible total weight of the accessory including the load, depending on the load centre of gravity

Read and observe ! and ! on page 127 first.

An accessory can be mounted on the ball head of the towing device (such as a bike carrier).

If this accessory is used, the maximum permissible protrusion of the towing device ball head and the permissible gross vehicle weight of the accessory including load is to be observed.

The maximum permissible protrusion for the ball head of the towing device is **70 cm** » Fig. 152.

The total allowable weight of the accessory including load, changes with increasing distance of the centre of gravity of the load from the ball head of the towing device.

Distance of the load centre of gravity from the ball head	Permissible total weight of the accessories, including load
0 cm	50 kg
30 cm	50 kg
60 cm	25 kg
70 cm	0 kg

WARNING

- Never exceed the permissible gross weight of the accessory including load - there is a risk of damaging the ball head of the towing device.
- Never exceed the permissible protrusion of the ball head including towing device - there is a risk of damaging the ball head of the towing device.

Note

We recommend that you use the accessories from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Trailer

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Trailer, connect and disconnect 133
Loading a trailer 133
Towing a trailer 134
Anti-theft alarm system 134

If your vehicle has already been factory-fitted with towing equipment or is fitted with towing equipment from ŠKODA Original Accessories, then it meets all of the technical requirements and national legal provisions for towing a trailer.

Note

If there is an error in the trailer lighting system, check the fuses in the fuse box in the dashboard » page 181.

Trailer, connect and disconnect

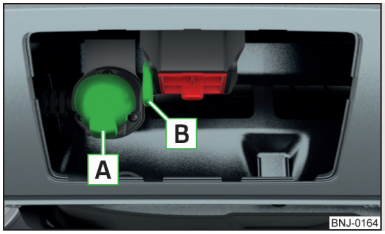


Fig. 153
13-pin socket, and safety eye

Coupling
› Fit the ball rod.
› Lift off protective cap 3 » Fig. 141 *on page 128* upwards.
› Place the trailer onto the ball head.
› Insert the trailer cable into the 13-pin socket A » Fig. 153.

If the trailer that is to be towed has a **7-pin connector**, you can make an electrical connection using a suitable adapter from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

› Hook the breakaway cable of the trailer to the security lock slot B.

The breakaway cable of the trailer has to **sag** when mounted into the security lock slot for all trailer positions relative to the vehicle (sharp curves, reverse driving and the like.)

Detaching
› Unhook the breakaway cable of the trailer from the securing eyelet B » Fig. 153.
› Pull the trailer cable out of the 13-pin socket.
› Remove the trailer from the ball head.
› Place cap 3 onto the ball head » Fig. 141 *on page 128*.

Exterior mirrors
You have to have additional exterior mirrors fitted if you are not able to see the traffic behind the trailer with the standard rear-view mirrors. National legal requirements must be observed.

Headlights
The front of the vehicle can be lifted when a trailer is being towed and the headlights can dazzle other road users.

Adjust the headlight setting on the headlight range control » page 60, *Operating the lights*.

Power to the trailer power grid
For the electrical connection between the vehicle and trailer, the power for the trailer power grid is supplied by the vehicle.

The power supply works with ignition on or off.

With the ignition off, the battery of the towing vehicle is discharged by activated consumers.

At low charge state of the vehicle battery power to the trailer is interrupted.

WARNING
- Improperly connected trailer electrical installations may cause accidents or serious injury due to electric shock.
- Work on the electrical system must only be carried out by specialist garages.
- Never directly connect the trailer's electrical system with the electrical connections for the tail lights or other current sources.
- After coupling the trailer and connecting up the power socket, check the rear lights on the trailer to ensure they work correctly.
- The handbrake on the vehicle must be applied when coupling and uncoupling the trailer.
- Never use the safety eyelet for towing!

CAUTION
Improperly connected trailer electrical installations may cause malfunction of the entire vehicle electronics.

Note
- The total power consumption of all the connected consumers on the trailer must not exceed 350 watts.
- Coat the ball head of the towing device with a suitable grease whenever necessary.

Loading a trailer

The vehicle/trailer combination must be balanced, whereby the maximum permissible drawbar load must be utilised. If the drawbar load is too low, it jeopardises the performance of the vehicle/trailer combination.

Distribution of the cargo
Distribute the cargo in the trailer in such a way that heavy items are located as close to the trailer axle as possible. Secure the items from slipping.

The distribution of the weight is very poor if your vehicle is unladen and the trailer is laden. Maintain a particularly low speed if you cannot avoid driving with this combination.

Tyre pressure
Correct the tyre inflation pressure on your vehicle for a "full load" » page 161.

Towing capacity and trailer weight
The permissible trailer load must not be exceeded under any circumstances » page 192, *Technical data*.

The details given in the vehicle's technical documentation always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual.

The trailer loads specified apply only to altitudes up to 1,000 metres above mean sea level.

The engine output falls as altitude increases, as does the ability to climb. Therefore, for every additional 1,000 m in height (or part), the maximum permissible towed weight must be reduced by 10 %.

The towed weight comprises the actual weights of the (loaded) towing vehicle and the (loaded) trailer.

The trailer and drawbar load information on the type plate of the towing equipment are merely test data for the towing equipment. The vehicle-specific values are detailed in the vehicle documents.

WARNING
- Do not exceed the maximum permissible axle and drawbar load and weight of the trailer - risk of accident and serious injuries!
- An unsecured load can adversely affect stability and driving safety significantly - there is a risk of accident!

Towing a trailer

Driving speed
For safety reasons, do not drive faster than 80 km/h when towing a trailer.

Immediately reduce your speed as soon as even the slightest swaying of the trailer is detected. Never attempt to stop the trailer from "swaying" by accelerating.

Brakes
Apply the brakes in good time! If the trailer is fitted with a **trailer brake**, apply the brakes gently at first, then brake firmly. This will avoid brake jolts resulting from the trailer wheels locking.

On downhill sections shift down a gear in good time to also use the engine as a brake.

Engine overheating
If the pointer of the coolant temperature gauge reaches the red scale range, the speed should be reduced immediately.

Stop and switch off the engine if the warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster display.

The following information must be observed » page 36, *Coolant*.

The coolant temperature can be reduced by switching on the heating.

WARNING
- Always drive particularly carefully with the trailer.
- Adapt your speed to the conditions of the road surface and to the traffic situation.

CAUTION
If you tow a trailer frequently, you should also have your vehicle inspected between service intervals.

Anti-theft alarm system

When the vehicle is locked, the alarm is activated when the electrical connection to the trailer is interrupted.

Always switch off the anti-theft alarm system before a trailer is coupled or uncoupled » page 54.

Conditions for including a trailer in the anti-theft alarm system.
- ✓ The vehicle is factory-fitted with an anti-theft alarm system and towing equipment.
- ✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle by means of the trailer socket.
- ✓ The electrical system of the vehicle and trailer is functional.
- ✓ The vehicle is locked with the vehicle key and the anti-theft alarm system is activated.

CAUTION

For technical reasons, trailers with rear LED lights cannot be connected to the anti-theft alarm system.

General Maintenance

Care and maintenance

Services, modifications and technical alterations

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Vehicle operating under different weather conditions 136
Statutory checks 136
ŠKODA Service Partners 137
ŠKODA Original parts 137
ŠKODA Original accessories 137
Spoiler 138
Component protection 138
Airbags 138
Acceptance and recycling of used vehicles 139

The instructions and guidelines issued by ŠKODA AUTO a.s. must be observed when making any modifications, repairs or technical changes to your vehicle.

Compliance with these guidelines and instructions is in the interest of the roadworthiness and technical condition of your vehicle. The vehicle will comply with road traffic regulations following the modifications, repairs and technical changes.

Always consult a ŠKODA Partner » page 137before buying accessories or parts, or before carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

WARNING

- Works on your vehicle, which have been carried out unprofessionally, can cause operational faults – risk of accident!
- Interference on the electronic components and their software can lead to operational faults. This interference can also impair not directly affected systems because of the networking of the electronic components. The operational safety of the vehicle may be at significant risk and parts may suffer increased wear.

For the sake of the environment

Technical documents regarding changes carried out on the vehicle must be kept by the vehicle user, in order to be handed over to the recyclers later. This ensures that vehicle recycling is in accordance with environmental regulations.

Note

- We recommend only having these modifications, repairs and technical changes performed by a specialist garage.
- Any damage caused by technical alterations made without the approval of the manufacturer is excluded from the » *Service schedule* warranty.
- The ŠKODA Partner cannot assume any liability for products which have not been approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s. even though these may be products with a type approval or have been approved by a nationally recognised testing laboratory.
- We advise you only to use ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts which have been expressly approved for use on your vehicle. Reliability, safety and suitability for your vehicle are guaranteed with these.
- ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner who will also fit the purchased parts correctly.

Vehicle operating under different weather conditions

Read and observe ! on page 136 first.

If you would like you operate your vehicle in countries other than its intended weather conditions, you should contact a ŠKODA Partner.

They will advise you on certain precautions that should be taken to ensure the full functioning of the vehicle as well as to prevent damage.

For example coolant and battery replacement or similar.

Statutory checks

Read and observe ! on page 136 first.

Many countries have legislation requiring the operational reliability and road worthiness and/or exhaust gas properties of a vehicle to be tested at specific intervals. These tests can be carried out by workshops or testing stations that have been legally authorised for this purpose.

The ŠKODA Service Partners are up-to-date on the legally required tests and will prepare the vehicle for the tests as part of a service operation if required, or will be responsible for carrying out these tests. The specialist garages can carry out the specified tests directly, if required by the customer, if they are authorised to do so. This saves you time and money.

Even if you want to take your vehicle to an officially approved test centre for prior checking in preparation of a legally required test, we recommend that you consult the service consultant of your ŠKODA Service Partner beforehand.

Based on their appraisal, the service consultant will tell you which areas you should focus on in order to ensure that your vehicle will pass the technical test without any problems. This allows you to avoid additional expenses resulting from a possible subsequent test.

ŠKODA Service Partners

Read and observe ! on page 136 first.

ŠKODA Service Partners are equipped with modern, specially developed tools and equipment. Here, trained specialists have access to a comprehensive range of ŠKODA Original Parts and ŠKODA Original Accessories for carrying out modifications, repairs and technical alterations.

All ŠKODA service partners operate according to the latest guidelines and instructions from ŠKODA AUTO a.s. All service and repair work is therefore carried out on time and to the appropriate quality. Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition.

ŠKODA Service Partners are therefore properly prepared to service your vehicle and to provide quality work. We therefore advise you to have all modifications, repairs and technical alterations to your vehicle carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

ŠKODA Original parts

Read and observe ! on page 136 first.

We recommend the use of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for your vehicle, since these parts are approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s. They correspond exactly to ŠKODA AUTO a.s. specifications in respect of design, dimensional accuracy and material and are identical to the components used in the batch production.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. can guarantee the safety, suitability, and long life of these products. We therefore recommend that you only use ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. supplies the market with a complete range of ŠKODA Genuine Parts not only while the model is still in production but with wear-and-tear parts for at least 15 years after the end of series production and with all other vehicle parts for at least 10 years.

ŠKODA service partners are liable for any defects in ŠKODA original parts for a period of 2 years after sale in accordance with materials defect liability under the law unless otherwise agreed in the purchase agreement. You should keep the confirmed warranty certificate and the receipt for these components for this period, so that the commencement of the warranty term may be verified.

Body repairs
ŠKODA vehicles are designed so that if the body suffers damage, it is only necessary to replace those parts which are in fact damaged.

Before you decide to have damaged body parts replaced, however, you should first contact your specialist garage to determine whether or not such parts can also be repaired. Repairs to body parts are usually cheaper.

ŠKODA Original accessories

Read and observe ! on page 136 first.

You should note the following if you wish to fit accessories to your vehicle:

We recommend that you use ŠKODA Genuine Accessories in your vehicle. ŠKODA AUTO a.s. offers a warranty on the reliability, safety and suitability for your particular vehicle of these accessories. Although we constantly monitor the market, we are not able to assess or offer a warranty on other products even though in some instances such products may have a type approval or may have been approved by a nationally recognised approval authority.

All accessory products go through a fastidious process of technical development (technical tests) and quality inspection (customer tests), and only if all tests are positive does the product become a ŠKODA Genuine Accessory.

Our ŠKODA Genuine Accessories service also provides expert advice and professional fitting if requested by the customer.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects in ŠKODA Genuine Parts for a period of 2 years after installation or delivery in accordance with materials defect liability legislation, unless otherwise agreed in the purchase contract or in ▸

any other agreements. You should keep the confirmed warranty certificate and the receipt for these accessories for this period, so that the commencement of the warranty term may be verified.

In addition, ŠKODA Service Partners also stock a range of suitable car care products as well as those parts which are subject to natural wear and tear, such as tyres, batteries, bulbs and wiper blades.

Note

The accessories authorized by ŠKODA AUTO a.s. will be offered by the ŠKODA Partners in all countries where ŠKODA AUTO a.s. has a sales and service network. This will usually be in the form of a printed catalogue of Original ŠKODA Accessories, in the form of separate printed brochures or in the form of offers for ŠKODA Genuine Accessories on the ŠKODA Partner's website.

Spoiler

Read and observe ! on page 136 first.

If your new vehicle is fitted with a spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the spoiler on the luggage compartment lid, then the following instructions must be adhered to.

› For safety reasons the vehicle must only ever be equipped with a spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the associated spoiler on the tailgate.
› A spoiler cannot be fitted alone on the front bumper nor in combination without a spoiler on the tailgate or in combination with an inappropriate spoiler on the tailgate.
› We recommend that you consult a ŠKODA Service Partner for any repairs, replacement, fitting or removal of spoilers.

WARNING

▪ Work not properly performed on the spoilers on your vehicle can result in faults - there is a risk of an accident and serious injury.
▪ If a front spoiler, full wheel trim, etc. is mounted retrospectively, it must be ensured that the air supply to the front wheel brakes is not reduced. The front brakes may overheat, which can have a negative impact on the functioning of the braking system – there is a risk of an accident.

Component protection

Read and observe ! on page 136 first.

Some electronic vehicle components (such as the instrument cluster) are factory-equipped with component protection.

Component protection has been developed as a protection mechanism for the following situations.

› Impairment of factory- or garage-fitted electronic components after installation in another vehicle (for example, after a theft).
› Impairment of electronic components used outside the vehicle.
› The possibility of a legitimate installation or change of electronic components for repairs at a specialist garage.

The activated component protection can be realized by functional limitations of the specific electronic component. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Airbags

Read and observe ! on page 136 first.

WARNING

▪ Adjustments, repairs and modifications which have been carried out unprofessionally can cause damage, operational faults, and can also seriously impair the effectiveness of airbag system – there is the risk of an accident and fatal injury.
▪ A change in the suspension of the vehicle including the use of non-approved wheels and tyre combinations can alter the functioning of the airbag system - there is a risk of accident and fatal injury.

WARNING

Information on the use of the airbag system
▪ Never install any airbag parts into the vehicle that have been removed from old cars or have been recycled.
▪ Never fit damaged airbag parts to a vehicle. The airbags may then not be triggered properly or not at all in the event of an accident.

WARNING

- No modifications of any kind must be made to parts of the airbag system.
- Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Never make any changes to the front bumper or the bodywork.
- It is prohibited to manipulate individual parts of the airbag system, as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
- The protective function of the airbag system is sufficient for only one accident. The airbag system must then be replaced if the airbag has been deployed.

WARNING

The airbag control unit operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). Resulting damage can have a negative impact on the function of the airbag system. Any work on the front doors and their door panels must be carried out by a specialist garage. The following guidelines must be observed.

- Never drive with inner door panels removed.
- Never drive if parts of the inner door panel have been removed and the resulting openings have not been properly sealed.
- Never drive if the loudspeakers in the doors have been removed, unless the loudspeaker openings have been properly sealed.
- Always make sure that the openings are covered or filled if additional loudspeakers or other equipment parts have been installed in the inner door panels.

Acceptance and recycling of used vehicles

Read and observe ! on page 136 first.

ŠKODA meets the requirements of the brand and its products with regard to protecting the environment and the preserving resources. All new ŠKODAvehicles can be recycled by up to 95 % and can always [1]be returned free of charge.

In a lot of countries sufficient trade-in networks have been created, where you can trade-in your vehicle. After you trade-in your vehicle, you will receive a confirmation stating the recycling in accordance with environmental regulations.

Note

Detailed information about the trade-in and recycling of end-of-life cars is available from a specialist garage.

Washing vehicle

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Washing by hand 140
Automatic car wash systems 140
Washing with a high-pressure cleaner 140

The best protection for your vehicle against harmful environmental influences is **frequent** washing.

The longer insect residues, bird droppings, tree sap, road and industrial dust, tar, soot particles, road salt and other aggressive deposits remain adhering to the paintwork of your vehicle, the more detrimental their destructive effect can be. High temperatures, such as those caused by intensive sun's rays, accentuate this caustic effect.

It is essential to also thoroughly clean the **underside of the vehicle** at the end of the winter.

WARNING

Washing your vehicle in the winter: Water and ice in the brake system can affect the braking efficiency – there is the risk of an accident.

CAUTION

The temperature of the water used for cleaning must not exceed 60 °C – there is a risk of damaging the vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Only wash the vehicle at washing bays intended for this purpose.

[1] Subject to fulfilment of the national legal requirements.

Washing by hand

Read and observe ! and ! on page 139 first.

Soften the dirt with plenty of water and rinse as much as you can of this off.

Clean the vehicle with a soft **sponge**, a **washing glove** or a washing brush. Work from the top to the bottom - starting with the roof.

For stubborn dirt, agents specifically intended for this purpose are to be used.

Wash out the sponge or washing glove thoroughly at short intervals.

Clean wheels, door sills and similar parts last. Use a second sponge for such areas.

Give the vehicle a good rinse after washing it and dry it off using a chamois leather.

! WARNING

Protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts when cleaning the underfloor or the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims – risk of cuts!

! CAUTION

- Only apply slight pressure when cleaning the vehicle's paintwork.
- Do not wash your vehicle in bright sunlight – there is a risk of paint damage.

Automatic car wash systems

Read and observe ! and ! on page 139 first.

The usual precautionary measures must be taken before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash system (e.g. closing the windows including the sliding/tilting roof, etc.).

If your vehicle is fitted with any particular attached parts, such as a spoiler, roof rack system etc., it is best to consult the operator of the car wash system beforehand.

The lips of the windscreen wiper rubbers must be cleaned and degreased with cleaning agents especially formulated for the task after an automatic wash with wax.

! CAUTION

- Before driving through a car wash fold in the exterior mirrors - there is a risk of damage.
- For vehicles with roof antenna the antenna rod should be unscrewed before driving through a car wash - there is a risk of damage.

Washing with a high-pressure cleaner

Read and observe ! and ! on page 139 first.

When washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, the instructions for use of the equipment must be observed. This applies in particular to the **pressure** used and to the **spraying distance**.

Maintain a sufficiently large distance to the parking aid sensors and soft materials such as rubber hoses or insulation material.

! CAUTION

- Do not aim the water jet directly at the lock cylinders or the door or opening joints when washing the vehicle in the winter – there is a risk of freezing.
- The sensors of the parking aid can be sprayed only for a short time and there must be a minimum distance of 10 cm - there is a risk of damage.

i Note

See also Washing a vehicle with decorative film trim using a high-pressure cleaner » page 142 .

Cleaning vehicle exterior

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Vehicle paint work 141
Plastic parts 141
Rubber seals 141
Chrome and anodized parts 142
Decorative and protective foils 142
Windows and external mirrors 142
Headlight glasses 143
Door closing cylinder 143
Cavity protection 143

Jack 143
Wheels 143
Towing device and mounting recess 144
Under-body protection 144
Wiper blades 144

We recommend using care products from ŠKODA Original Accessories that are available from ŠKODA Partners. The instructions for use on the package must be observed.

WARNING

- Care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always keep the automobile care products safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children - there is a danger of poisoning!
- Protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts when cleaning the underfloor, the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims – risk of cuts!

CAUTION

- Do not use any insect sponges, kitchen scrubbers or similar cleaning products – there is a risk of damaging the paintwork finish.
- Cleaners containing solvents can damage the material being cleaned.

For the sake of the environment

Used cans of vehicle care product represent hazardous waste that is harmful to the environment. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legislation.

Note

Because of the special tools and knowledge required, and to avoid any potential problems with the cleaning and care of the exterior of your vehicle, we recommend that cleaning and care of your vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

Vehicle paint work

Read and observe and on page 141 first.

Preserving the vehicle paintwork

Thorough wax treatment is an effective way of protecting the paintwork from harmful environmental influences.

The vehicle must be treated with a high-quality hard wax polish at the latest, when no more drops form on the clean paintwork.

A new layer of a high-quality hard wax polish can be applied to the clean bodywork after it has dried thoroughly.

Even if you use a wax preserver regularly we still recommend that you treat the paintwork of the vehicle at least twice a year with hard wax.

Polishing

Polishing is necessary if the vehicle's paintwork has become unattractive and if it is no longer possible to achieve a gloss with wax preservatives.

If the polish does not contain any preserving elements, the paint must be treated with a preservative afterwards.

CAUTION

- Paint damage is to be repaired immediately.
- Never apply wax to the windows.
- Mat painted or plastic parts must not be treated with polishing products or hard waxes.
- Do not polish the paintwork in a dusty environment - there is a risk of scratching the paintwork.
- Do not apply polish to door seals or window guides.
- If possible, do not apply any polish to body surfaces that come into contact with door seals and window guides.

Plastic parts

Read and observe and on page 141 first.

Clean plastic parts with a damp cloth.

If this method does not clean plastic parts completely, use a specific plastic care product.

CAUTION

Do not use polish on plastic parts.

Rubber seals

Read and observe and on page 141 first.

All door seals and window guides are factory-treated with a colourless matt varnish layer against a freezing to painted body parts and against road noise.

CAUTION

- **Do not treat** the door seals or window guides with any cleaning agent.
- An additional treatment of the seals can attack their protective coating and road noise may be generated.

Chrome and anodized parts

Read and observe and on page 141 first.

First clean the chrome parts and anodized parts with a damp cloth and then polish them with a soft, dry cloth.

If this method does not completely clean the parts, use cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

CAUTION

- Do not polish the chrome parts and anodized parts in a dusty environment - risk of surface scratches.
- Never use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents for these parts - there is risk of damage.

Decorative and protective foils

Read and observe and on page 141 first.

Wash the films with a mild soap solution and clean, warm water.

The following instructions must be observed for the high-pressure washing the vehicle.

› The minimum distance between the nozzle and the vehicle body should be 50 cm.
› Keep the jet perpendicular to the film surface.
› The maximum water temperature is 50 °C.
› The maximum water pressure is 80 bar.

CAUTION

- Never use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents for the glued surfaces with films - there is a danger of film damage.
- Never use dirty cloths or chemical solvents for the glued surfaces with films - there is a danger of damaging the film.
- No ice scrapers should be used in the winter months to remove ice and snow from the areas to which films have been applied. Do not remove frozen snow or ice using other objects - there is a risk of damage to the film.

Windows and external mirrors

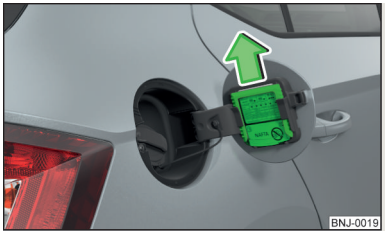


Fig. 154
Fuel filler flap: Remove ice scraper

Read and observe and on page 141 first.

Removing snow and ice
Use a plastic ice scraper for removing snow and ice from the windows and mirrors.

The ice scraper can be found on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

› Open the fuel filler flap.
› Slide out the ice scraper in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 154.

Cleaning windows
Clean the windows regularly with clean water, inside and out.

Dry the glass surfaces with a clean chamois leather or a cloth intended for this purpose.

CAUTION

Instructions for removing snow and ice
- The ice scraper should not be moved forward and backward but in one direction to avoid any damage to the surface of the glass.
- Snow or ice that is contaminated with coarse dirt such as fine gravel, sand, and salt must not be removed from the window glass and mirrors – risk of damage to the surface of the windows and mirrors.
- Never remove snow or ice from glass parts using warm or hot water – there is a risk of cracking in glass.
- Make sure that when removing snow and ice from the windows, the labels attached to the vehicle by the factory are not damaged.

CAUTION

Information for cleaning windows

- Do not clean the inside of the windows with sharp-edged objects or corrosive and acidic cleaning agents – there is a risk of damaging the heating elements or window aerial.
- When drying the windows after washing the vehicle, do not use window leathers that have been used to polish the bodywork. Residues of preservatives in the chamois leather can smear the windows and reduce visibility.

Headlight glasses

Read and observe and on page 141 first.

Clean the plastic headlight lenses with clean, warm water and soap.

CAUTION

- The headlights are **never** to be wiped dry - there is a risk of damaging the protective lacquer and the headlight glass subsequently developing cracks.
- Do not use sharp objects to clean the glasses - there is a risk of damaging the protective lacquer and the headlight glasses subsequently developing cracks.
- Do not use any aggressive cleaning or chemical solvent products to clean the headlights – risk of damaging the headlight lenses.

Door closing cylinder

Read and observe and on page 141 first.

Specific products must be used for de-icing door lock cylinders.

CAUTION

Make sure that as little water as possible gets into the locking cylinder when washing the vehicle - there is a risk of freezing the lock cylinder!

Cavity protection

Read and observe and on page 141 first.

All the cavities of your vehicle which are at risk from corrosion are protected for life by a layer of **protective wax** applied in the factory.

Wax protection does not require to be inspected or re-treated.

If any small amount of wax flow out of the cavities at high temperatures, these must be removed with a plastic scraper and the stains cleaned using a petroleum cleaner.

WARNING

Safety regulations should be observed when using petroleum cleaner to remove wax – there is a risk of fire.

Jack

Read and observe and on page 141 first.

The jack is maintenance-free.

If necessary, the moving parts of the jack should be lubricated with a suitable lubricant.

Wheels

Read and observe and on page 141 first.

Wheel rims

Also thoroughly wash the wheel rims when washing the vehicle on a regular basis.

Regularly remove salt and brake dust otherwise the rim material will be attacked.

Light alloy wheels

After washing thoroughly and treat the wheel rims with a protective product for light alloy wheels.

For the treatment of wheel rims do not use products which may cause damage to the paint on the rims.

CAUTION

- Damage to the paint layer on the wheel rims must be touched up immediately.
- Severe layers of dirt on the wheels can also result in wheel imbalance. This may show itself in the form of a wheel vibration which is transmitted to the steering wheel which, in certain circumstances, can cause premature wear of the steering. This means it is necessary to remove the dirt.

Towing device and mounting recess

Read and observe ! and ! on page 141 first.

Close the mounting recess with the cap to prevent any ingress of dirt.

In the event of dirt, clean the inner surfaces of the mounting recess and treat with a suitable preservative.

Before hitching a trailer check the ball head and apply a suitable grease where necessary.

Fit the protective cap when stowing away the ball head to protect the luggage compartment against dirt.

! CAUTION

Apply grease to the inner part of the mounting recess. Make sure you do not remove any grease.

Under-body protection

Read and observe ! and ! on page 141 first.

The underside of your vehicle is already permanently protected by the factory against chemical and mechanical influences.

It is not possible to guarantee that the protective coating will not suffer any damage as the vehicle is driven.

We recommend that you have the protective coating under the body and on the chassis inspected - preferably before the beginning and at the end of the cold season.

! WARNING

Never use additional underbody protection or anti-corrosion agents for exhaust pipes, catalytic converters, diesel particle filters or heat shields. These substances could ignite when the engine reaches its operating temperature - there is a risk of fire.

Wiper blades

Read and observe ! and ! on page 141 first.

Clean the wiper blades regularly with a glass cleaner. The wiper blades should be cleaned with a sponge or cloth if they are heavily soiled by insect residues, for example.

The wiper blades can become soiled with wax residues after washing in automatic vehicle wash systems for example.

Interior care

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Natural leather 145
Artificial leather, materials and Alcantara® 145
Seat covers 146
Safety belts 146

We recommend using care products from ŠKODA Original Accessories that are available from ŠKODA Partners. The instructions for use on the package must be observed.

! WARNING

- Care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always keep the automobile care products safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children - there is a danger of poisoning!
- Air fresheners and scents can be hazardous to heath when the temperature inside the vehicle is high.

! CAUTION

- Be sure to check clothing for colourfastness to avoid any damage or visible stains on the material (leather), panels and textiles.
- Remove fresh stains such as those from ball-point pens, ink, lipstick, shoe polish, etc., from the material (leather), panels and textiles as quickly as possible.
- Do not attach scents and air fresheners to the dashboard – risk of damage to the dash panel.

▪ Do not attach any stickers to the filaments or glass antenna - there is risk of damage.
▪ Do not clean the headlining with a brush – risk of damage to the lining surface.
▪ Cleaners containing solvents can damage the material being cleaned.
▪ Apply only a small amount of the cleaning and care product.

For the sake of the environment
Used cans of vehicle care product represent hazardous waste that is harmful to the environment. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legislation.

Note
Because of the special tools and knowledge required, and to avoid any potential problems with the cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle, we recommend that cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

Natural leather

Read and observe and on page 144 first.

The leather needs, depending on the strain placed on it, regular cleaning and maintenance.

Dust and dirt in pores and creases cause abrasions on the surface and lead to premature brittling of the leather surface. Therefore, they must be removed **regularly at short intervals** with a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Clean soiled leather surfaces with a cotton or woollen cloth lightly moistened with water and then dry with a clean dry cloth » .

Clean **more severely soiled areas** with a cloth soaked in a mild soap solution (2 tablespoons of natural soap to 1 litre of water).

To **remove stains**, use a cleaning agent specially designed for this purpose.

Treat the leather periodically with a suitable leather protector and use a skin care cream with light blocker and impregnation after each cleaning.

CAUTION
▪ Ensure that the leather is not soaked through at any point during cleaning and that no water gets into the stitching of the seams. The leather would then become brittle and cracked.
▪ Avoid leaving the vehicle for lengthy periods in bright sunlight to avoid the leather from bleaching. If the vehicle is parked in the open for lengthy periods, protect the leather from direct sunlight by covering it.
▪ The use of an additional mechanical steering wheel lock may damage the leather surface of the steering wheel.
▪ Some clothing materials, such as dark denim, do not have sufficient colour fastness. This can cause damage or clearly visible discolouration to seat covers even when treated correctly. This is particularly true for light-coloured upholstery. This is not a defect in the seat cover, but poor colour fastness of the clothing textiles.
▪ Sharp-edged objects on items of clothing such as zip fasteners, rivets, sharp-edged belts etc. may leave permanent scratches or signs of rubbing on the surface or damage these. Damage of this nature cannot later be recognized as a justified complaint.

Note
During the life of the vehicle, minor visible changes can occur on the leather parts of the covers (e. g wrinkles or creases as a result of the stress of the covers).

Artificial leather, materials and Alcantara®

Read and observe and on page 144 first.

Synthetic leather
Clean the synthetic leather with a damp cloth.

If the synthetic leather does not come completely clean with this method, a mild soap solution or specific cleaning agent must be used.

Fabrics
Clean upholstery cover materials and cloth trims on doors, boot cover, etc. using specific cleaning agents, e.g., dry foam.

Use a soft sponge, brush, or commercially available microfibre cloth.

Use a cloth and special detergent to clean the headlining.

Remove pilling and residues on upholstery with a brush.

Remove stubborn hair with a "cleaning glove".

Alcantara®
Dust and dirt in pores, creases and seams may chafe and damage the surface. Therefore, they must be removed **regularly at short intervals** with a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Minor changes in colour caused by use are normal.

CAUTION
- For Alcantara® seat covers, do not use any solvents, floor wax, shoe cream, stain remover, leather cleaners or similar agents.
- Avoid leaving the vehicle in bright sunlight for long periods of time in order to stop the artificial leather, materials or Alcantara® from bleaching. During extended periods of standing outdoors, protect artificial leather, fabrics or Alcantara® by covering.
- Some clothing materials, such as dark denim, do not have sufficient colour fastness. This can cause damage or clearly visible discolouration to seat covers even when treated correctly. This is particularly true for light-coloured upholstery. This is not a defect in the seat cover, but poor colour fastness of the clothing textiles.

Seat covers

Read and observe and on page 144 first.

Electrically heated seats
Use a specific cleaning agent such as dry foam or similar to clean the covers. » .

Seats without seat heating
Thoroughly vacuum the seat covers with a vacuum cleaner before cleaning.

Clean the seat covers with a damp cloth or cleaning agents particularly formulated for them.

Compressed areas created on the fabrics by everyday use can be removed by brushing against the nap with a lightly moistened brush.

Always treat all parts of the upholstery so that no visible boundaries are created. Then leave the seat to dry completely.

CAUTION
- Do not clean the covers of electrically heated seats either with water or with other liquids - there is a risk of damaging the seat heating system.
- Regularly vacuum dust from the seat covers using a vacuum cleaner.
- Electrically heated seats must not be dried after cleaning by switching on the heater.
- Do not sit on wet seats - there is a risk of stretching the upholstery.
- Always clean the seats "from seam to seam".

Safety belts

Read and observe and on page 144 first.

Wash dirty seat belts with a mild, soapy solution.

Remove dirt with a soft brush.

WARNING
- The seat belts must not be removed for cleaning.
- Never clean the seat belts chemically as chemical cleaning products could destroy the fabric.
- The seat belts must not be allowed to come into contact with corrosive liquids (such as acids etc.).
- Inertia reel belts must be completely dried before being rolled up.

Inspecting and replenishing

Fuel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Refuelling 147
Lead-free petrol 148
Diesel fuel 149

The correct fuel grades for your vehicle are specified on the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 155 *on page 147*.

CAUTION

- Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring, which can result in damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.
- Immediately remove any fuel that has spilled onto the vehicle's paintwork – risk of paint damage.
- If the vehicle was not purchased in the country in which it was intended to be operated, you should check whether the fuel specified by the manufacturer is offered in the country where the vehicle will be operated. You should also perhaps check whether the manufacturer has recommended a different fuel for operation of the vehicle in the country concerned. If no prescribed fuel is available, then you must check whether it is permitted by the manufacturer to operate the vehicle with another fuel type.

Refuelling

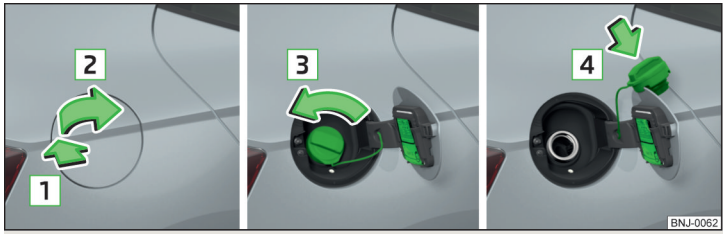


Fig. 155 **Open fuel filler flap / unscrew tank cap / place the tank cap on the fuel filler flap**

Read and observe ! on page 147 first.

Refuelling can be done if the following conditions are met.

✓ The vehicle is unlocked.
✓ The engine and the ignition are switched off.

› Press on the fuel filler flap in the direction of the arrow 1 accordingly » Fig. 155.
› Open the cover in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Unscrew the tank cap in the direction of the arrow 3.
› Remove the tank cap and place on top of the fuel filler flap in direction of arrow 4.
› Insert the pump nozzle into the fuel filler tube as far as it will go » !.

The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time » !.

› Remove the pump nozzle from the fuel filler neck and put it back in the pump.
› Screw in the tank cap in the opposite direction of the arrow 3 until it audibly clicks into place.
› Close the fuel filler flap until it clicks into place.

Check that the fuel filler flap is closed properly.

WARNING

- Do not smoke when refuelling and do not use a mobile phone.
- The fuel and fuel vapours are explosive - risk to life!
- Observe the local regulations regarding fuel handling.

WARNING

Instructions for filling the reserve canister

- Never fill the reserve can inside the vehicle.
- Never place the reserve can on the vehicle.
- Always place the reserve can on the floor.
- The national legal requirements must be observed if carrying a spare canister in the vehicle.
- We do not recommend carrying any fuel canisters in your vehicle for safety reasons. In the event of an accident this could be damaged and fuel could escape – there is a risk of fire.

CAUTION

- The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time, provided the nozzle has been operated properly. Do not continue refuelling.
- Be careful when filling diesel fuel from the spare canister and then do this slowly and cautiously – danger of contaminating the body.

Note

The fuel tank has a capacity of about **45 litres**, including a reserve of approx. **7 litres**.

Lead-free petrol

The correct fuel grades for your vehicle are specified on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

Read and observe ! on page 147 first.

The vehicle can only be operated with **unleaded petrol** in compliance with the **EN 228**[1] standard.

All petrol engines can be operated using petrol with a **maximum of** 10% bioethanol **(E10)**.

Unleaded petrol 95/91 or 92 or 93 RON/ROZ

We recommend using unleaded fuel with an octane rating of **95** RON. Unleaded petrol with the octane ratings **91, 92** and/or **93** RON can also be used, but may result in a slight loss in performance and slightly increased fuel consumption and exhaust emissions.

Unleaded petrol min. 95 RON / ROZ

Use unleaded fuel with an octane rating of **95** RON or higher.

In an **emergency** petrol with the octane ratings **91, 92** and/or **93** RON can also be used, but may result in a slight loss in performance and slightly increased fuel consumption and exhaust emissions. Continue driving at medium engine speeds and minimum engine load » !.

Refuel using petrol of the prescribed octane number as soon as possible.

Fuel additives

Unleaded petrol complying with EN 228 [1] meets all the conditions for a smooth-running engine. We therefore recommend that no fuel additives are used. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.

CAUTION

- Even one filling of the tank with petrol that does not meet the standards can lead to serious damage to parts of the exhaust system!
- If a fuel other than unleaded fuel which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. leaded petrol) is put in the tank by mistake, do not start the engine or switch on the ignition. Extensive damage to engine parts can occur.

CAUTION

- If petrol with a lower octane number than the one prescribed is used do not drive with a high engine speed. A high engine load can severely damage engine components.
- Even in the event of an emergency, petrol of a lower octane number than **91** RON must not be used, otherwise the engine can be severely damaged.

CAUTION

In no case may fuel additives with metal components be used, especially not with manganese and iron content. Risk of causing considerable damage to parts of the engine or exhaust system.

[1] In Germany also DIN 51626-1 or E10 for unleaded petrol with octane rating 95 or 91 or DIN 51626-2 or E5 for unleaded petrol with octane rating 95.

CAUTION

Do not use fuels with metal components, such as LRP (lead replacement petrol) **may be used. Risk of causing considerable damage to parts of the engine or exhaust system.**

Note

- Unleaded petrol that has a higher octane number than that required by the engine can be used without limitations.
- The use of petrol with an octane rating higher than **95** RON in does not result in either a noticeable increase in power nor lower fuel consumption in vehicles for which unleaded petrol **95/91, 92 or 93** RON is specified.
- On vehicles using prescribed unleaded petrol of **min. 95** RON, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95** RON can increase the power and reduce fuel consumption.

Diesel fuel

The correct fuel grades for your vehicle are specified on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

Read and observe ! on page 147 first.

The vehicle can only be operated with **diesel fuel** that meets the **EN 590**[1] standard.

All diesel engines can be operated using diesel fuel with a **maximum of** 7% biodiesel **(B7)**[2].

On the **Indian** market, your vehicle will only be able to run on **diesel fuel** compliant with standard **IS 1460/Bharat IV**. If diesel fuel which complies with this standard is not available, you can refuel with diesel fuel according to standard **IS 1460/Bharat III** in case of emergency.

Operation in winter - winter-grade diesel fuel

In the cold season, only use "winter-grade diesel fuel" which will still operate properly even at a temperature of -20 °C.

It is often the case in countries with different climatic conditions that diesel fuels available have a different temperature characteristic. ŠKODA Partners and filling stations in the relevant country will be able to provide you with information regarding the diesel fuels available.

Preheating fuel

The vehicle is fitted with a fuel filter preheating system. This secures operation of a vehicle using diesel fuel down to an environmental temperature of -24 °C.

Diesel fuel additives

The diesel fuel in accordance with the prescribed standards meets all the conditions for a smooth running engine. We therefore recommend that no diesel fuel additives are used. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.

CAUTION

- Just filling the tank once with diesel fuel that does not comply with the standard, can cause severe damage to parts of the engine, the fuel and exhaust system.
- If a different fuel other than diesel fuel, which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. petrol) is used, do not start the engine or switch on the ignition! Extensive damage to engine parts can occur.
- Water which has collected in the fuel filter can cause engine faults.

CAUTION

- The vehicle cannot be operated with biofuel **RME**, therefore this fuel must not be filled in the tank and used for driving the vehicle. The use of biofuel **RME** can cause considerable damage to parts of the engine or fuel system.
- Do not mix any fuel additives, so-called "flow improvers" (petrol and similar agents), into the diesel. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.

Engine compartment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening and closing the bonnet 151
Engine compartment overview 151
Radiator fan 152
Windscreen washer system 152

[1] In Germany also DIN 51628, in Austria ÖNORM C 1590, in Russia GOST R 52368-2005 / EN 590:2004.

[2] In Germany complying with standard DIN 52638, in Austria ÖNORM C 1590, in France EN 590.

WARNING

When working in the engine compartment, injuries, scalding, accident or fire hazards may arise. For this reason, it is essential to comply with the warning instructions stated below and with the generally applicable rules of safety. The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area.

WARNING

Instructions before beginning work in the engine compartment
- Turn off the engine and remove the ignition key.
- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- For vehicles with manual transmission the lever into the neutral position.
- On vehicles with automatic transmission, shift the selector lever into the **P** position.
- Allow the engine to cool.
- Never open the bonnet if you can see steam or coolant flowing out of the engine compartment – there is a risk of scalding. Wait until the steam or coolant has stopped escaping.

WARNING

Information for working in the engine room
- Keep all people, especially children, away from the engine compartment.
- Never touch the radiator fan while the engine is still warm. The fan might suddenly start running!
- Do not touch any hot engine parts – there is a risk of burns.

WARNING

Information for working in the engine compartment with the engine running
- Pay particular attention to moving engine parts, e.g. V-ribbed belt, generator, radiator fan - danger to life!
- Never touch the electric wiring on the ignition system.
- Avoid short circuits in the electrical system, particularly on the vehicle's battery.
- Always make sure that no jewellery, loose clothing or long hair can get caught in rotating engine parts – there is a risk of death. Always remove any jewellery, tie back long hair and wear tight fitting clothing before completing any work.

WARNING

Information for working on the fuel system or the electrical system
- Always disconnect the vehicle battery from the electrical system.
- Do not smoke.
- Never work near open flames.
- Always have a functioning fire extinguisher nearby.

WARNING

- Read the information and warning instructions on the fluid containers.
- Keep the working fluids in sealed original containers and safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children.
- Never spill operating fluids over the hot engine - risk of fire.
- If you wish to work under the vehicle, you must secure the vehicle against rolling away and support it with suitable axle stands: the car jack is not sufficient for this – there is a risk of injury.

CAUTION

Always top up using the correct specification of fluids. This may result in major operating problems and also vehicle damage!

For the sake of the environment

In view of the requirements for the environmentally friendly disposal of fluids and the special tools and knowledge required for such work, we recommend that fluids be changed by a specialist garage.

Note

- If there is anything you are not sure about concerning fluids, please consult a specialist garage.
- Fluids with the proper specifications can be purchased from the ŠKODA Original Accessories or from the ŠKODA Genuine Parts ranges.

Opening and closing the bonnet

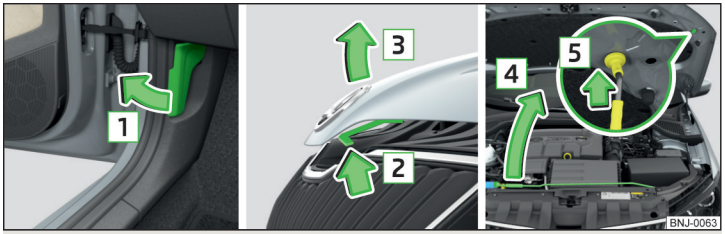


Fig. 156 **Opening the bonnet**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 150 first.

Open flap

› Open the front door.
› Pull the release lever under the dash panel in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 156.

Before opening the bonnet, ensure that the arms of the windscreen wipers are correctly in place against the windscreen, otherwise the paintwork on the flap could be damaged.

› Push the release lever in the direction of arrow 2.

The bonnet is then unlocked.

› Grasp the bonnet catch and lift in the direction of arrow 3.
› Remove the lid prop in the direction of arrow 4 from the holder.
› Secure the open flap inserting the end of the post into the opening in the direction of arrow 5.

Close the flap

› Lift the bonnet.
› Decouple the bonnet support and press into the holder designed to hold it.
› Let the bonnet drop into the lock carrier lock from a height of around 20 cm – do **not push it in**.

! WARNING

- Check that the bonnet is closed properly.
- If you notice that the lock is not properly engaged while driving, stop the vehicle immediately and close the bonnet – there is the risk of an accident.
- Make sure that when closing the bonnet, no body parts are crushed - there is danger of injury!

! CAUTION

Never open the bonnet by the locking lever » Fig. 156.

Engine compartment overview

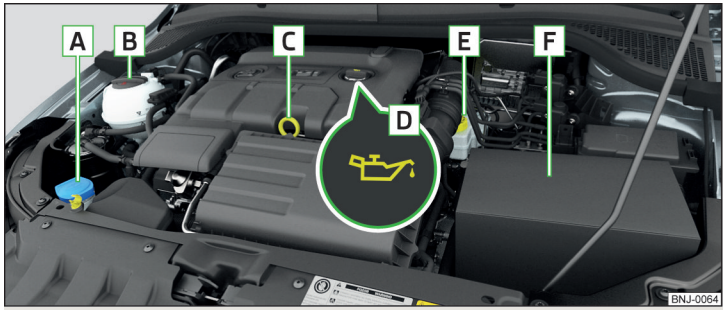


Fig. 157 **Principle sketch: Engine compartment**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 150 first.

Arrangement in the engine compartment » Fig. 157

A	Windscreen washer fluid reservoir	152
B	Coolant expansion reservoir	155
C	Engine oil dipstick	153
D	Engine oil filler opening	154
E	Brake fluid reservoir	156
F	Battery (below a cover)	156

i Note

The location of the inspection points in the engine compartment of petrol and diesel engines is practically identical.

Radiator fan

Read and observe ! and ! on page 150 first.

The radiator fan is powered by an electric motor. Operation is controlled according to the temperature of the coolant.

! WARNING

The fan can intermittently continue to run for approximately 10 minutes after the ignition is switched off.

Windscreen washer system

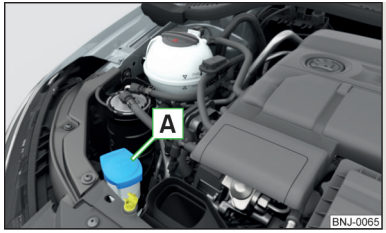


Fig. 158
Windscreen washer fluid reservoir

Read and observe ! and ! on page 150 first.

The windscreen washer fluid reservoir A is located in the engine compartment » Fig. 158.

The cleaning fluid is provided for the cleaning of the front and rear window as well as the headlight.

The capacity of the reservoir is about 3.5 litres or about 5.4 litres on vehicles that have a headlight cleaning system [1].

Clear water is not sufficient to intensively clean the windscreen and headlights. We recommend using clean washing water together with the screen cleaner from the range of ŠKODA Original Accessories **(in winter additionally with antifreeze)** which is capable of removing stubborn dirt.

The washing water should always be mixed with antifreeze in winter even if the vehicle has heated windscreen washer nozzles.

Under exceptional circumstances, methylated spirits can also be used if no screen cleaner with antifreeze is available. The concentration of methylated spirits must not be more than 15 %. The freeze protection at this concentration is sufficient only to -5 °C.

! CAUTION

- Under no circumstances must radiator antifreeze or other additives be added to the windscreen washer fluid.
- If the vehicle is fitted with a headlight cleaning system, only cleaning products which do not attack the polycarbonate coating of the headlights must be added to the windscreen washer fluid.
- Do not remove the filter from the windscreen washer fluid reservoir when replenishing it with liquid otherwise the liquid transportation system can be contaminated, which can cause the windscreen washer system to malfunction.

Engine oil

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Specification 153
Checking the oil level 153
Replenishing 154

The engine has been factory-filled with a high-grade oil that can be use throughout the year - except in extreme climate zones.

Engine oils are the subject of continuous further development. Thus the information stated in this Owner's Manual is only correct at the time of publication.

ŠKODA Service Partners are informed about the latest changes by the manufacturer. We therefore recommend that you have the oil changed by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

The specifications (VW standards) stated in the following can be indicated separately or together with other specifications on the bottle.

The engine oil should be changed after specified service intervals » page 46.

[1] In some countries, 5.4 ltr. applies for both variants.

WARNING

The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. While working in the engine compartment, be sure to observe the following warnings » page 149.

CAUTION

Do not pour any additives into the engine oil – risk of serious damage to the engine parts.

Note

- Before a long drive we recommend that you purchase and carry with you engine oil which complies with the specification for your vehicle.
- We recommend that you use oils from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- You must wash yourself thoroughly if your skin has come into contact with oil.

Specification

Read and observe and on page 153 first.

Vehicles with variable service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification
1.0 l/44, 55 kW MPI - EU6	VW 504 00
1.2 l/66, 81 kW TSI	

Diesel engine	Specification
1.4 l/66, 77 kW TDI CR	VW 507 00

Vehicles with fixed service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification
1.0 l/44, 55 kW MPI - EU6	VW 502 00
1.0 l/55 kW MPI - EU4	
1.2 l/66, 81 kW TSI	
1.6 l/66, 81 kW MPI	

Diesel engine	Specification
1.4 l/66, 77 kW TDI CR	VW 507 00

CAUTION

- If the above engine oils are not available, a different engine oil can be used in an emergency. To prevent damage to the engine, a **maximum of 0.5 litres** only of the following engine oils may be used:
  - For petrol engine models: ACEA A3/ACEA B4 or API SN, (API SM);
  - For diesel engine models: ACEA C3 or API CJ-4.

Checking the oil level

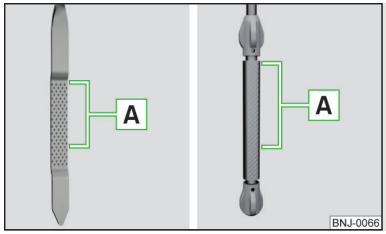


Fig. 159
Principle sketch: Dipstick

Read and observe and on page 153 first.

The dipstick indicates the engine oil level .

Dipstick » Fig. 159

A The oil level must be within this range.

The oil can be checked and topped up, if the following conditions are satisfied.

✓ The vehicle is standing on a horizontal surface.
✓ The engine operating temperature is reached.
✓ The engine is turned off.
✓ The bonnet is open.

Check the status

› Wait a few minutes until the engine oil flows back into the sump.
› Pull out the dipstick.
› Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth and insert it again to the stop.
› Pull the dipstick out again and check the oil level.
› Re-insert the dipstick.

The engine burns some oil. The oil consumption may be as much as 0.5 l/1 000 km depending on your style of driving and the conditions under which you operate your vehicle. Consumption may be slightly higher than this during the first 5 000 km.

The oil level must be checked at regular intervals.

In case of low oil level, the display of the instrument cluster shows a check mark as well as the relevant notification » page 37. Check the oil level using the dipstick as soon as possible. Add oil accordingly.

CAUTION

- The oil level must never be above the range A » Fig. 159 - risk of damage to the motor as well as the exhaust system.
- If for some reason, it is not possible to top up the engine oil under the current circumstances, do not continue driving! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- If the oil level is above the range A, do not continue to drive! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Replenishing

Read and observe and on page 153 first.

› Unscrew the cap of the engine oil filler opening » Fig. 157 *on page 151*.
› Replenish the oil in portions of 0.5 litres in accordance with the correct specifications » page 153.
› Check the oil level » page 153.
› Screw the lid of the engine oil filler closed carefully.
› Pull the dipstick out as far as the stop.

Coolant

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Checking the coolant level 155
Replenishing 155

The coolant provides cooling for the motor.

It consists of water and coolant additive with additives that protect the cooling system against corrosion and prevents furring.

The coolant additive level in the coolant must be at least 40%.

The coolant additive may be increased to a maximum of 60%.

The correct mixing ratio of water and coolant additive is to be checked if necessary by a specialist garage or is to be restored if necessary.

The description of the coolant is shown in the coolant expansion reservoir » Fig. 160 *on page 155*.

WARNING

The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. While working in the engine compartment, be sure to observe the following warnings » page 149.
- The coolant is harmful to health.
- Avoid contact with the coolant.
- Coolant vapours are harmful to health.
- Never open the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir while the engine is still warm. The cooling system is pressurized!
- When opening the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir, cover it with a cloth to protect your face, hands and arms from hot steam or hot coolant.
- If any coolant splashes into your eyes, immediately rinse out your eyes with clear water and contact a doctor as soon as possible.
- Always keep the coolant in the original container safe from people who are not completely independent, especially children - there is a danger of poisoning!
- Consult a doctor immediately if coolant is swallowed.
- Never spill operating fluids over the hot engine - risk of fire.

CAUTION

- Do not continue if for some reason it is not possible to fill with coolant under the current circumstances! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- With an empty expansion tank top up coolant. The system could ventilate - there is a risk of engine damage, not continue! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- The amount of coolant additive in the coolant must never be allowed to fall below 40 %.
- Over 60 % coolant additive in the coolant reduces the antifreeze protection and coolant effectiveness.
- A coolant additive that does not comply with the correct specification can significantly reduce the corrosion protection of the cooling system.
- Any faults resulting from corrosion may cause a loss of coolant and can consequently result in major engine damage.
- Do not fill the coolant above the mark A » Fig. 160 *on page 155*.
- If an error occurs, leading to the engine overheating, the help of a professional garage is to be sought - there is a risk of serious engine damage occurring.

▪ Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant.
▪ Never cover the radiator - there is a risk of the engine overheating.

Checking the coolant level

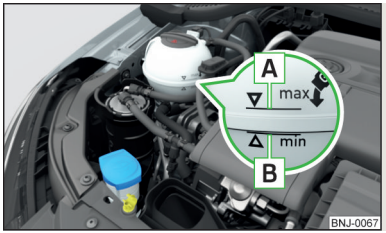


Fig. 160
Coolant expansion reservoir

Read and observe ! and ! on page 154 first.

The coolant expansion bottle is located in the engine compartment.

Coolant expansion reservoir » Fig. 160
A Mark for **the maximum** permissible coolant level
B Mark for the **lowest** permissible coolant level

The coolant level should be kept between the marks A and B.

The coolant can be checked and topped up, if the following conditions are satisfied.
✓ The vehicle is standing on a horizontal surface.
✓ The engine is turned off.
✓ The engine is not heated.
✓ The bonnet is open.

Check the status
› Check the level of coolant at the coolant expansion vessel » Fig. 160.

If the engine is warm, the test result may be inaccurate. The stand can also be above the mark A » Fig. 160.

In case of low coolant level, the control symbol is displayed in the instrument cluster as well as the relevant notification » page 36, *Coolant* in the instrument cluster. We still recommend inspecting the coolant level directly at the reservoir from time to time.

Loss of coolant
A loss of coolant is first and foremost an **indication of a leak** in the cooling system. Do not merely top up the coolant. Have the cooling system checked by a specialist garage.

Replenishing

Read and observe ! and ! on page 154 first.

The coolant expansion tank should always contain a small amount of coolant » page 154, ! in section *Introduction*.

› Place a cloth over the cap of the coolant expansion tank and **carefully** unscrew the cap.
› Replenish the coolant.
› Turn the cap until it clicks into place.

! CAUTION
▪ Only top up with new coolant.
▪ Do not use an alternative additive if the specified coolant is not available. In this case, use just water and have the correct mixing ratio of water and coolant additive restored by a specialist garage as soon as possible.

Brake fluid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Level check 156
Specification 156

The brake fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment » Fig. 161 *on page 156*.

! WARNING
▪ The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. While working in the engine compartment, be sure to observe the following warnings » page 149.
▪ Do not use used brake fluid - the function of the brake system may be impaired – there is the risk of an accident.

CAUTION

- Do not continue your journey if the fluid level has dropped below the "MIN" marking » Fig. 161 *on page 156*, - there is a risk of an accident! Seek help from a specialist garage.
- Brake fluid damages the paintwork of the vehicle.

Note

- The brake fluid is changed as part of a prescribed inspection service.
- We recommend using oils from the ŠKODA Original Accessories range.

Level check



Fig. 161
Brake fluid reservoir

Read and observe and on page 155 first.

The fluid can be checked if the following conditions are met.

✓ The vehicle is standing on a horizontal surface.
✓ The engine is turned off.
✓ The bonnet is open.

Check the status

› Check the level of brake fluid in the reservoir » Fig. 161.

The level must be between the "MIN" and "MAX" markings.

A slight drop in the fluid level results in operation due to normal wear and tear and the automatic adjustment of the brake pads.

There may be an indication of a leak in the brake system, however, if the fluid level drops significantly within a short time or if it drops below the "MIN" marking.

Too low brake fluid level is indicated by the warning light illuminating in the instrument cluster as well as the relevant notification being displayed » page 32, *Brake system*.

Specification

Read and observe and on page 155 first.

The brake fluid must comply with the following standards or specifications:

› VW 50114;
› FMVSS 116 DOT4.

Vehicle battery

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Open cover 157
Checking the battery electrolyte level 158
Charging 158
Replacing 159
Disconnecting or reconnecting 159
Automatic load deactivation 159

The vehicle battery represents a power source for the motor to start and for the supply of electrical consumers in the car.

Warning symbols on the vehicle battery

Symbol	Meaning
	Always wear eye protection.
	Battery acid is severely caustic. Always wear gloves and eye protection.
	Keep fire, sparks, open flames and lit cigarettes well clear of the vehicle battery.
	When charging the vehicle battery, a highly explosive gas mixture is produced.
	Keep children away from the vehicle battery.

WARNING

There is a risk of injuries, poisoning, chemical burns, explosions or fire when carrying out any work on the battery and on the electrical system. It is essential to comply with the generally applicable rules of safety as well as the warning instructions outlined below.

- Keep the vehicle battery away from people who are not completely independent, especially children.
- Do not tilt the battery otherwise battery electrolyte may flow out of the battery vent openings.
- Protect your eyes by wearing safety glasses or a face shield – there is a risk of being blinded.
- Always wear protective gloves, eye and skin protection when handling the vehicle battery.
- The battery acid is strongly corrosive and must, therefore, be handled with the greatest of care.
- Corrosive fumes in the air irritate the air passages and lead to conjunctivitis and inflammation of the air passages in the lungs.
- Battery acid corrodes dental enamel and creates deep wounds on contact with the skin which take a long time to heal.
- If any battery electrolyte comes into contact with your eyes, rinse the eyes immediately with clear water for several minutes - consult a doctor immediately.
- Splashes of acid on your skin or clothes should be neutralised as soon as possible using soap suds and then rinsed with plenty of water.
- Seek immediate medical assistance if you swallow battery acid.

WARNING

- The use of open flames and light should be avoided.
- Smoking and radio triggering activities should be avoided.
- Never use a damaged vehicle battery – there is a risk of explosion.
- Never charge a frozen or thawed vehicle battery – there is a risk of explosion and caustic burns.
- Replace a frozen vehicle battery.
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with an electrolyte level that is too low – risk of explosion and caustic burns.

CAUTION

- Improper handling of the vehicle battery may cause damage.
- Ensure that battery acid does not come into contact with the bodywork – there is a risk of damage to the paintwork.
- If the vehicle has not been driven for more than 3 to 4 weeks, the battery will discharge. Prevent the battery from discharging by disconnecting the battery's negative terminal ⊖ or continuously charging the battery with a very low charging current.
- Do not place the battery in direct daylight in order to protect the vehicle battery housing from the effects of ultra-violet light.
- If the vehicle is frequently used for making short trips, the vehicle battery will not have time to charge up sufficiently and may discharge.

For the sake of the environment

A vehicle battery that has been removed is a special type of hazardous waste. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.

Note

- We recommend having all work on the vehicle battery carried out by a specialist garage.
- You should replace batteries older than 5 years.

Open cover

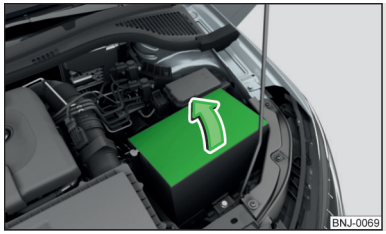


Fig. 162
Polyester cover of vehicle battery

Read and observe ! and ! on page 157 first.

The battery is located in the engine compartment - in some models, underneath a polyester cover » Fig. 162.

› Fold out the cover on the battery in the direction of the arrow.

The battery cover is installed in reverse order.

Checking the battery electrolyte level

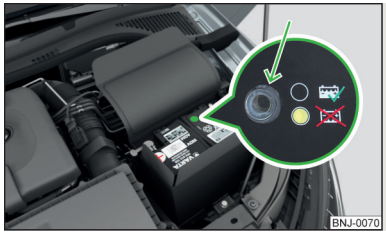


Fig. 163
Vehicle battery: Electrolyte level indicator

Read and observe ! and ! on page 157 first.

On vehicles with a vehicle battery fitted with a colour indicator, » Fig. 163 the colouring of the display can indicate the acidic level.

Air bubbles can influence the colour of the indicator. For this reason carefully knock on the indicator before carrying out the check.
› Black colour - electrolyte level is correct.
› Colourless or light yellow colour - electrolyte level too low, the battery must be replaced.

Vehicles with a START-STOP system are fitted with a battery control unit for checking the energy level for the recurring engine start.

We recommend you have the electrolyte level checked by a specialist garage from time to time, especially in the following cases.
› High external temperatures.
› Longer day trips.
› After each charge.

Winter time
The vehicle battery only has some of its starting power at low temperatures. **A discharged vehicle battery may freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C**.

We therefore recommend that you have the battery checked and, if necessary, recharged by a specialist garage before the start of the winter.

Note
▪ The battery electrolyte level is also periodically checked by a specialist garage as part of the Inspection Service.
▪ For technical reasons, on vehicles with the description "AGM", the electrolyte level cannot be checked.

Charging

Read and observe ! and ! on page 157 first.

A properly charged vehicle battery is essential for reliably starting the engine.

A charging operation can be performed if the following conditions are satisfied.
✓ The engine is turned off.
✓ The ignition is switched off.
✓ All consumers are turned off.
✓ The bonnet is open.

"Fast charging" with high currents
› Disconnect both battery cables (first of all "negative", then "positive").
› Attach the terminal clamps of the charger to the battery terminals (red = "positive", black = "negative").
› Plug the mains cable of the charger into the power socket and switch the charger on.
› Once charging is complete: Switch off the charger and remove the mains cable from the power socket.
› Only then disconnect the charger's terminal clamps.
› Reconnect the cables to the battery (first "positive", then "negative").

Charging with low voltages
It is not necessary to disconnect the cables from the battery if you recharge the vehicle battery, for example from a mini-charger.

Refer to the charger manufacturer's instructions.

A charging current of 0.1 multiple of the total vehicle battery capacity (or lower) must be used until full charging is achieved.

The vent plugs of the vehicle battery should not be opened for charging.

WARNING

- When you charge a battery, hydrogen is released, and a highly explosive gas mixture is also produced. An explosion can be caused through sparkling over during unclamping or loosening of the cable plug while the ignition is on.
- Creating a bridge between the poles on the battery (e.g. with metal objects - cables) creates a short circuit - risk of damage to the battery, explosion and burning of the battery, jets of acid spurting out.
- Avoid creating sparks when working with cables and electrical devices. Strong sparking represents a risk of injury.
- Before carrying out any work on the electrical system, switch off the engine, the ignition and all electrical consumers and disconnect the negative terminal ⊖.
- "Quick-charging" the vehicle battery is **dangerous** and requires a special charger and specialist knowledge.
- We therefore recommend that vehicle batteries be "rapidly charged" by a specialist garage.

CAUTION

On vehicles with the START/STOP system or additional heating (auxiliary heating), the pole terminal of the charger must not be connected directly to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery, but only to the engine earth » page 174.

Replacing

Read and observe ! and ! on page 157 first.

The new vehicle battery must have the same capacity, voltage, current and the same size as the original battery. Suitable vehicle battery types can be purchased from a specialist garage.

We recommend that the battery is replaced by a specialist garage, where the new vehicle battery will be installed properly and the original battery will be disposed of in accordance with national regulations.

Disconnecting or reconnecting

Read and observe ! and ! on page 157 first.

Disconnecting

› Switch off the ignition.

› First, disconnect the negative terminal ⊖ first, then the positive ⊕ terminal of the battery.

Connecting

› First, connect the positive ⊕ first, then the negative ⊖ battery terminal.

After disconnecting and re-connecting the vehicle battery, the following functions or devices are partially or completely inoperative.

Function / device	Operating measure
Electric windows	» page 59
Radio	Enter code » *operating instructions for the Infotainment display radio*
Time settings	» page 31

CAUTION

- Disconnect the vehicle battery only with the ignition turned off - there is a risk of damaging the electrical system of the vehicle.
- Under no circumstances must the battery cables be connected incorrectly – risk of a cable fire.

Note

- After disconnecting and re-connecting the vehicle battery, we recommend having the vehicle checked by a specialist to ensure that the full functionality of all electrical systems is guaranteed.
- The data of the multi-function display will be reset.

Automatic load deactivation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 157 first.

The vehicle voltage control unit automatically prevents the battery from discharging when the battery is subjected to heavy loads. This may be noticed from the following.

› The idling speed is raised to allow the generator to deliver more electricity to the electrical system.

› Where appropriate large convenience consumers, e.g. seat heaters, rear window heaters, have their power limited or shut off completely if necessary.

CAUTION

- Despite such intervention by the vehicle electric system management, the vehicle battery may be drained. For example, when the ignition is switched on a long time with the engine turned off or the side or parking lights are turned on during longer parking.
- Consumers which are supplied via a 12 V socket can cause the vehicle battery to discharge when the ignition is switched off.

Note

Driving comfort is not disrupted by any shutting off of consumers. Often the driver is not aware of it having taken place.

Wheels

Tyres and rims

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Notes on using wheels 161
Tyre pressure 161
Tyre wear 162
Tyre wear indicator and wheels exchange 162
Tyre damage 163
Unidirectional tyres 163
Spare wheel 163
Spare wheel 163
Tyre label 164

Only use those tyres or wheel rims which have been approved by ŠKODA for your model of vehicle.

WARNING

National legal requirements must be observed for the use of tyres.

WARNING

For safety reasons, do no replace tyres individually.

For the sake of the environment

Old and unserviceable tyres are a polluting hazardous waste. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legislation.

Note

- We recommend that any work on the wheels or tyres is carried out by a specialist garage.
- We recommend that you use wheel rims, tyres, full wheel trims and snow chains from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Notes on using wheels

Read and observe ! on page 160 first.

During the first 500 km, new tyres do not offer optimum grip and appropriate care should therefore be taken when driving.

Always fit the tyres with the deeper tread depth to the front wheels.

Tyre storage
Mark the tyres as you remove them so that you are able to refit them to run in the same direction.

Always store wheels or tyres in a cool, dry and, where possible, dark place. Tyres which are not fixed to a wheel trim should be stored upright.

Tyre age
Tyres age losing their original characteristics, even if they are not used. The service life of the tyres is 6 years. Therefore, we recommend not using tyres older than 6 years.

Wheel bolts
Wheels and wheel bolts are matched to each other in terms of design. Therefore we recommend that you use wheel rims and wheel bolts from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

! WARNING
Never use tyres if you do not know anything about the condition and age.

Tyre pressure

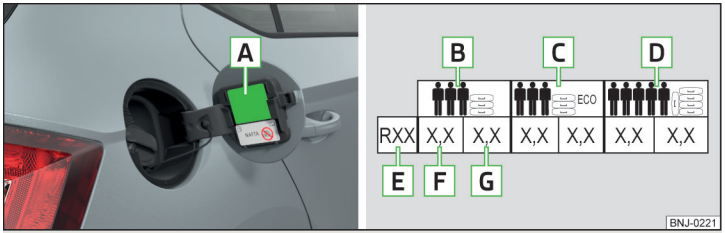


Fig. 164 **Label with a table of tyre sizes and tyre pressure value / inflate tyres**

Read and observe ! on page 160 first.

The prescribed tyre inflation is on the sticker with pictograms A » Fig. 164 (for some countries, the pictograms are replaced with a text).

Tyre pressure is always to match the load.

- B Inflation pressure for half load
- C Inflation pressure for environmentally-friendly operation
  As a result of pressure level adaption to this value, the fuel consumption and pollutant emissions may fall slightly.
- D Inflation pressure for full load
- E Tyre diameter in inches
  These details are intended only as information for the specified tyre pressure and does not list approved tyre sizes for your vehicle.
  The approved tyre sizes for your vehicle are listed in the vehicle's technical documentation (the so called COC document) and this also states the declaration of conformity.
  The approved tyre diameter for your vehicle is also provided with the vehicle data » page 192.
- F Tyre pressure value on the front axle
- G Tyre pressure value on the rear axle

Check tyre pressures
Check the tyre pressure, including that of the emergency or spare wheel, at least once a month and also before setting off on a long journey.

Always check the inflation pressure when the tyres are cold. Do not reduce the higher pressure of warm tyres.

In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring tyre pressure values are to be stored every time the tyre pressure changes » page 125.

! WARNING
- The correct tyre pressure values is always the driver's responsibility.
- Too low or too high inflation pressure impairs handling.
- If the pressure is too low, the tyre must overcome a greater rolling resistance. This will heat the tyre up, especially at higher speeds. This can result in tread separation and a tyre blowout.
- For very fast tyre pressure loss, such as a sudden tyre failure try to bring the vehicle carefully to a stop without sudden steering movements and without any hard braking.

For the sake of the environment

Tyres which are insufficiently inflated increase your fuel consumption.

Note

The declaration of conformity (the so-called COC document), can be obtained from a ŠKODA partner.

Tyre wear

Read and observe ! on page 160 first.

Tyre wear depends on the pressure, driving style, and other circumstances.

Attention to the following notes may affect tyre wear.

Driving style

Fast cornering, sharp acceleration and braking increase the tyre wear.

Wheel balance

The wheels of a new vehicle are balanced. There are a wide range of influences when the car is being driven which may result in an imbalance. This may become apparent by "vibration" in the steering. If this is the case, the wheels have to be balanced at specialist garage.

Also have the wheels rebalanced after replacing or repairing the tyres.

Adjustment of the vehicle geometry

Incorrect wheel alignment at the front or rear leads to excess wear of the tyres and negatively affects the driving safety. With a distinctive tyre wear, we recommend that you check the setting of the vehicle geometry in a specialist workshop.

WARNING

- An incorrect wheel alignment at the front or rear impairs handling.
- Unusual vibrations or pulling of the vehicle to one side could be a sign of tyre damage. If there is any doubt that a wheel is damaged, immediately reduce your speed and stop! If no external tyre damage is evident, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest specialist garage to have the vehicle checked.

Tyre wear indicator and wheels exchange

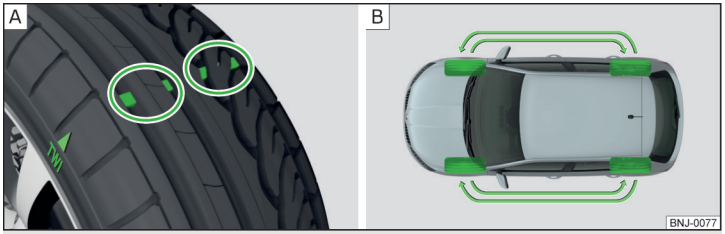


Fig. 165 **Principle sketch: Replace tyre tread with wear indicators / wheels**

Read and observe ! on page 160 first.

Wear indicators

The base of the tread of the tyres has 1.6 mm high wear indicators installed » Fig. 165 - A. In some countries, different tyre wear rates may apply.

Markings on the walls of the tyres through the letters "TWI", triangular symbols or other symbols identify the position of the wear indicators.

Exchanging the wheels

For uniform wear on all tyres, we recommend that you change the wheels every 10 000 km according to the scheme » Fig. 165- B. You will then obtain approximately the same life for all the tyres.

After swapping the wheels, the tyre pressure should be adjusted.

In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, save tyre pressure values» page 125.

WARNING

- You must have your tyres replaced with new ones at the latest when the wear indicators have been worn down.
- Worn tyres do not provide the necessary grip particularly at high speeds on wet roads. "Aquaplaning" (uncontrolled movements of the vehicle – "swimming" on a wet road surface) could be the result.

Tyre damage

Read and observe ! on page 160 first.

We recommend checking your tyres and wheel rims for damage (punctures, cuts, splits and bulges, etc.) on a regular basis. Remove foreign bodies (e.g. small stones) from the tyre profile immediately.

Drive over kerbs and other such obstacles slowly and at right angles wherever possible in order to avoid damage to tyres and wheel trims.

Immediately replace damaged wheel rims or tyres.

! WARNING

Never drive with damaged tyres – there is the risk of an accident.

! CAUTION

The tyres must be protected from contact with substances such as oil, grease and fuel, which could damage them. If the tyres with these substances come into contact, then we recommend that you check this in a specialist workshop.

Unidirectional tyres

Read and observe ! on page 160 first.

The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by **arrows on the wall of the tyre**.

The direction of rotation indicated must be complied with to obtain the best benefits from the characteristics of these tyres.

These characteristics are principally the following.
› Increased driving stability.
› Reduced risk of aquaplaning.
› Reduced tyre noise and reduced tyre wear.

Spare wheel

Read and observe ! on page 160 first.

The size of the spare wheel is identical to that of the vehicle factory installed wheels.

After changing the spare wheel, the tyre pressure should be adjusted.

In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, save tyre pressure values» page 125.

! WARNING

- If, you get a puncture and a spare tyre has to be mounted with opposite direction of rotation, then drive carefully. In this situation the best properties of the tyre are no longer present.
- If the dimensions or design of the spare wheel differ from the tyres fitted to the vehicle (e.g. winter tyres or low-profile tyres), it must only be used briefly in the event of a puncture and if an appropriately cautious style of driving is adopted.
- Never use the temporary spare wheel if it is damaged.

Spare wheel

Read and observe ! on page 160 first.

A yellow warning label **is** always **displayed** on the rim of the temporary spare wheel.

Please note the following if you intend to use the temporary spare wheel.
› The warning label must not be covered after installing the wheel.
› Be specially attentive when driving.
› The temporary spare wheel is inflated to the maximum inflation pressure for the vehicle » page 161.
› Only use the temporary spare wheel to reach the nearest specialist garage since it is not intended for permanent use.

If you need to use a spare wheel, make sure to fit a standard wheel of the appropriate dimensions and design as soon as possible.

In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, save tyre pressure values» page 125.

! WARNING

- Never drive with more than one spare wheel mounted!
- Only use the spare wheel while absolutely necessary.
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.
- The snow chains cannot be used on the spare wheel.
- If the dimensions or design of the temporary spare wheel differ from the tyres fitted, never drive faster than 80 km/h (or 50 mph).
- Never use the emergency spare wheel if it is damaged.
- Observe the instructions on the warning sign of the temporary spare wheel.

Tyre label

Read and observe ! on page 160 first.

Only fit radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern on one axle on all four wheels.

When mounting new tyres the tyres have to be replaced axle by axle.

Explanation of tyre markings
For example, **185/65 R 14 86 T** means:

185	Tyre width in mm
65	Height/width ratio in %
R	Code letter for the type of tyre – **R**adial
14	Diameter of wheel in inches
86	Load index
T	Speed symbol

The **date of manufacture** is stated on the tyre wall (possibly on the **inside**).

For example **DOT ... 10 15...** means, for example, that the tyre was manufactured in the 10th week of 2015.

Load index
The load index indicates the maximum permissible load bearing capacity for each individual tyre.

Load index	83	84	85	86	87	88
Load (In kg)	487	500	515	530	545	560

Speed symbol
The maximum speed symbol indicates the maximum permissible vehicle speed with fitted tyres in each category.

Speed symbol	S	T	U	H	V	W
Topspeed (in km/h)	180	190	200	210	240	270

! WARNING

- Never exceed the maximum permissible **load bearing capacity** of mounted tyres.
- Never exceed the maximum permissible **speed** for the mounted tyres.

Winter use

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Winter tyres 164
Snow chains 165

Do not use rims with polished surface during the winter time. Due to the manufacturing the rim surface doe not have sufficient corrosion protection and could be permanently damaged (e.g. through grit).

Winter tyres

The handling of your vehicle will be significantly improved when driving on wintry roads if you fit winter tyres (labelled **M+S**).

To get best possible handling, winter tyres must be used on all four wheels. The minimum tread depth should be 4 mm.

Re-fit the summer tyres at an appropriate time as they provide better handling properties, a shorter braking distance, less tyre noise, and reduced tyre wear on roads which are free of snow and ice as well as at temperatures above 7 °C.

Speed symbol
Winter tyres (marked with **M+S** and a peak/snowflake symbol ⛷) of a lower speed category can be used provided that the permissible maximum speed of these tyres is not exceeded even if the possible maximum speed of the vehicle is higher.

On vehicles with the infotainment system with key **CAR**the speed limit can be set for winter tyres » *Operating instructions Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - Adjust vehicle systems*.

For other vehicles, there is the possibility to have the speed limit set for winter tyres in a specialist workshop.

Snow chains

When driving on wintry roads, snow chains improve not only traction, but also the braking performance.

Snow chains must only be mounted on the front wheels.

It is only permissible to fit snow chains with the following wheel/tyre combinations.

Wheel size	Depth D	Tyre size
5Jx14	35 mm	175/70 R14
6Jx15	38 mm	185/60 R15

Only fit snow chains with links and locks not larger than 12 mm.

Remove the full wheel trims before installing the snow chains » page 168.

WARNING

Observe the national legal regulations relating to the use of snow chains.

CAUTION

The chains are to be removed when driving where there is no snow. Otherwise they cause loss of performance and damage the tyres.

Do-it-yourself

Emergency equipment, and self-help

Emergency equipment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Placement of the first aid kit and warning triangle ____ 166
Placement of the reflective vest ____ 166
Fire extinguisher ____ 167
Vehicle tool kit ____ 167

Placement of the first aid kit and warning triangle

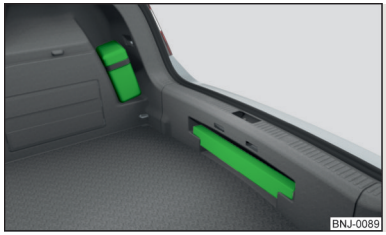


Fig. 166
First aid kit and warning triangle - Version 1

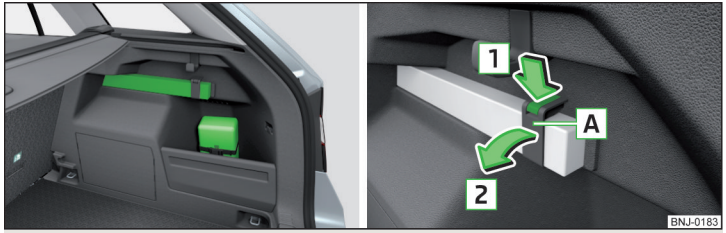


Fig. 167 **First-aid kit and warning triangle - loosen version 2 / attachment strap**

The following information is for the first aid kit and warning triangle from the ŠKODA Original accessories valid.

For another first aid kit and warning triangle the storage compartments may possibly be too small.

First-aid box
The first-aid box can be attached by a strap to the right-hand side of the boot » Fig. 166 or » Fig. 167.

Warning triangle – version 1
The warning triangle can be stored in the rear wall trim panel » Fig. 166.

Warning triangle – version 2
The warning triangle can be placed in the panel at the right hand side of the luggage compartment and secured to the fastening strap » Fig. 167.

Undo / secure fastening strap
› Press the latch on the connector in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 167.
› Release strap A in the direction of arrow 2.
› Pull strap A against arrow direction 2 until it locks into place.

WARNING
The first-aid kit and warning triangle must always be secured safely so that they do not come loose when making an emergency braking or in a vehicle collision which could cause injuries to occupants.

Note
- Pay attention to the expiration date of the first-aid kit.
- We recommend using a first-aid box from ŠKODA Original Accessories available from a ŠKODA Partner.

Placement of the reflective vest

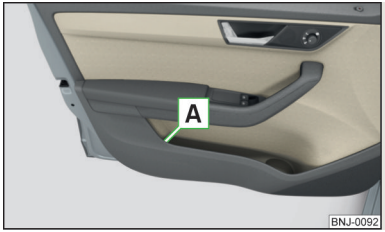


Fig. 168
Storage compartment for the reflective vest

The reflective vest can be stowed in the storage compartment inside the storage compartment of the door A» Fig. 168.

Fire extinguisher



Fig. 169
Fire extinguisher

The fire extinguisher is attached by two straps in a bracket under the front passenger's seat.

Removing/attaching

› Loosen the two straps by pulling the buckles in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 169.
› Remove the fire extinguisher.
› For mounting re-sit the fire extinguisher back into the holder and secure it with straps.

Please read carefully the instructions which are attached to the fire extinguisher.

The fire extinguisher must be checked by an authorised person once a year. National legal requirements must be observed.

! WARNING

The fire extinguisher must always be secured safely so that they do not come loose when making an emergency braking or in a vehicle collision which could cause injuries to occupants.

i Note

- The fire extinguisher must comply with national legal requirements.
- Pay attention to the expiration date of the fire extinguisher. Proper functioning of the fire extinguisher is not assured once it has passed its expiry date.
- The fire extinguisher is part of the scope of delivery in certain countries only.

Vehicle tool kit

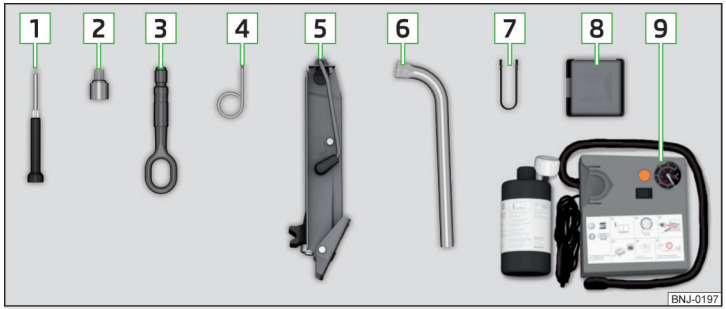


Fig. 170 **Vehicle tool kit**

The tool kit is housed in a box in the spare or emergency wheel compartment or in this storage space.

Depending on the equipment, not all of the following components in the onboard tool kit have to be contained in it.

1 Screwdriver
2 Adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts
3 Towing eye
4 Clamps for removing the wheel trims
5 Jack with sign
6 Wheel brace
7 Tool for removing wheel bolt caps
8 Replacement bulb set
9 Breakdown kit

! WARNING

The factory-supplied lifting jack is only intended for your model of vehicle. Under no circumstances attempt to lift heavier vehicles or other loads.

CAUTION

- Screw the jack back to the starting position before storing in the box with the tool kit screws.
- Ensure that the vehicle tool kit is safely secured in the boot.
- Ensure that the box is always secured with the strap.

Note

The declaration of conformity is included with the jack or the log folder.

Changing a wheel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Preparation 168
Remove / store wheel 168
Full wheel trim 168
Wheel bolts 169
Anti-theft wheel bolts 169
Loosening/tightening wheel bolts 170
Raising the vehicle 170
Remove the wheel / fix 171
Subsequent steps 171

For your own safety and the safety of the passengers, the following instructions must be observed before changing a wheel on the road.

✓ Switch on the hazard lights.
✓ The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.
✓ Park the vehicle as far away as possible from the flow of traffic.
✓ Choose a location with a flat, solid surface.
✓ Have **all the occupants get out.** The passengers should not stand on the road (instead they should remain behind a crash barrier, for instance) while the wheel is being changed.

The national legal requirements must be observed when changing a wheel.

Preparation

Before changing the wheel, the following work should be carried out.

› Switch off the engine.
› Select the **first gear** or move the selector lever for the automatic gearbox **into position P**.
› Apply the **handbrake** firmly.
› Uncouple trailer, if attached.
› Remove the **vehicle tool kit** » page 167 and the **spare wheel** from the boot.

Remove / store wheel



Fig. 171
Taking the wheel out

The wheel is located in a well under the floor covering in the boot and is fixed in place with a special bolt » Fig. 171.

Taking the wheel out

› Open the tailgate.
› Lift up the floor in the luggage compartment.
› Loosen the belt and take out the box with the tool kit.
› Unscrew the nut in direction of arrow » Fig. 171.
› Take out the wheel.

Stowing the wheel

› Place the wheel into the spare wheel well with the wheel rim pointing downward.
› Pull the fixing band through the opposite holes in the wheel rim.
› Screw on the nut in the opposite direction to the arrow » Fig. 171 until the wheel is safely secured.
› Replace the box with the tool kit into the emergency or spare wheel and secure it with the tape.
› Fold back the floor in the luggage compartment.
› Shut the boot lid.

Full wheel trim

Before removing the wheel bolts the wheel trim should be removed.

Pulling off

› Hook the clamp found in the vehicle tool kit » page 167 into the reinforced edge of the wheel trim.
› Push the wheel wrench through the clamp, support on the tyre and pull off the wheel trim.

Fitting

› Press the wheel trim onto the wheel rim at the designated valve opening » !.
› Then press the trim into the wheel rim until its entire circumference latches correctly into position.

! CAUTION

Notes from the factory or from the ŠKODA Original accessory delivered trim.
▪ When using an anti-theft wheel bolt, make sure that this has been fitted according to the position marked on the back of the wheel cover position.
▪ On the back of the wheel cover, the position for the anti-theft wheel bolt is marked by means of a symbol. If the wheel cover is set outside the position marked for the anti-theft wheel bolt, there is a risk of damaging the wheel cover.

! CAUTION

▪ Use the pressure of your hand only, do not strike the trim. The cover could be damaged.
▪ If wheel trims are fitted, it must be ensured that an adequate flow of air is assured to cool the brake system.

i Note

We recommend that you use hub caps from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Wheel bolts



Fig. 172
Remove the cap

Before removing the wheel bolts the caps are to be removed.

Pulling off

› Push the extraction pliers » page 167 sufficiently far onto the cap until the inner catches of the pliers are positioned at the collar of the cap.
› Remove the cap in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 172.

Fitting

› Push the cap onto the wheel bolt up to the stop.

Anti-theft wheel bolts

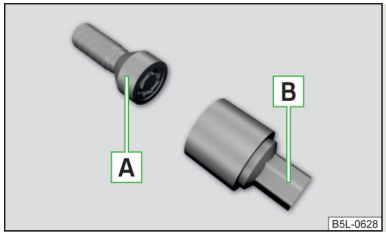


Fig. 173
Principle sketch: Anti-theft wheel bolt with adapter

The anti-theft wheel bolts protect wheels from being stolen. These can only be removed/tightened with the aid of the adapter B » Fig. 173.

› Remove the full wheel trim or the caps of the wheel bolts.
› The adapter B » Fig. 173with the toothed side all the way into the inner teeth in the head of the anti-theft wheel bolts A stuck.
› Push the wheel wrench onto the adapter B up to the stop.
› Loosen or tighten the wheel bolt » page 170.
› Remove the adapter.
› Replace the wheel trim or the caps.

For a possible wheel change the adapter for the anti-theft wheel bolts should always be kept in the vehicle. The adapter is stowed in the tool kit.

Note

▪ Note the embarked code number on both the adapter and at the end of each anti-theft wheel bolt. This number can be used to purchase a ŠKODA Original Parts replacement adapter, if necessary.
▪ The anti-theft wheel bolt set and adapter can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.
▪ The position of the anti-theft wheel bolt is marked on the back of the wheel cover with every ŠKODA supplied original equipment hub cap or directly at the factors. When using an anti-theft wheel bolt, make sure that this has been fitted according to the position marked on the back of the wheel cover position.

Loosening/tightening wheel bolts



Fig. 174
Changing a wheel: Loosening the wheel bolts

Before removing the wheel bolts the caps from the wheel bolts must be removed.

Undoing

› Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt as far as the stop[1].
› Grasp the end of the wrench and turn the bolt about **one** turn in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 174.

Tightening

› Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt as far as the stop[1].
› Grasp the end of the wrench and turn the bolt against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 174 until it is tight.

After tightening the wheel bolts the caps must be re-fit.

WARNING

If it proves difficult to undo the bolts, carefully apply pressure to the end of the wrench with your **foot**. Keep hold of the vehicle when doing so, and make sure you keep your footing.

Raising the vehicle



Fig. 175
Jacking points for positioning lifting jack

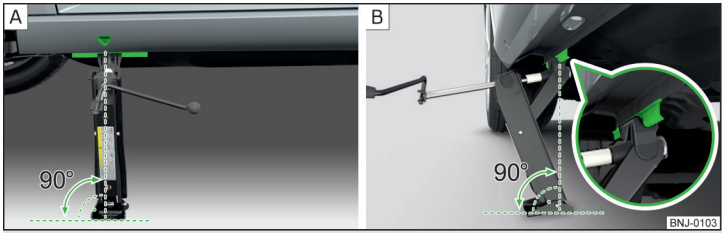


Fig. 176 **Attach lifting jack**

To lift the vehicle, us the jack from the tool kit.

Position the car jack at the jacking point closest to the flat tyre.

The jacking points are located on the metal bar of the lower beam.

The positions of these are embossed by means of markings on the side surface of the lower sill » Fig. 175.

[1] Use the appropriate adapter for undoing and tightening the anti-theft wheel bolts » page 169.

› Support the base plate of the jack with its full area resting on level ground and ensure that the jack is located in a vertical position at the jacking point » Fig. 176 - A.
› Position the lifting jack below the jacking point with the crank and move it up until its claw encloses the web » Fig. 176 - B.
› Continue turning up the jack until the wheel is just about lifted off the ground.

WARNING

- Choose a flat and firm surface for jacking the vehicle.
- If the wheel has to be changed on a slope, first of all block the opposite wheel with a stone or similar object to prevent the vehicle from unexpectedly rolling away.
- Secure the base plate of the lifting jack with suitable means to prevent possible moving. A soft and slippery ground under the base plate may move the lifting jack, causing the vehicle to fall down. It is therefore always necessary to place the lifting jack on a solid surface or use a wide and stable base. Use a non-slip base (e.g. a rubber foot mat) if the **surface is smooth**, such as cobbled stones, tiled floor, etc.
- Only attach the lifting jack to the attachment points provided for this purpose.
- Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed.
- Never position any body parts, such as arms or legs under the vehicle, while the vehicle is raised with a lifting jack.
- When the vehicle is raised, never start the engine.

CAUTION

Make sure that the jack is attached correctly to the web on the lower sil, otherwise there is a risk of damage to the vehicle.

Remove the wheel / fix

When changing a wheel, the following instructions must be followed.

› Remove the full wheel trim or the caps of the wheel bolts.
› First of all slacken the anti-theft wheel bolt and then the other wheel bolts.
› Jack up the vehicle until the wheel that needs changing is clear of the ground.
› Unscrew the wheel bolts and place them on a clean surface (cloth, paper, etc.).
› Remove the wheel carefully.
› Attach the wheel and slightly screw on the wheel bolts.
› Lower the vehicle.
› Tighten the opposite wheel bolts alternately (cross-wise) with the wheel wrench. Tighten the anti-theft wheel bolt last.
› Replace the wheel trim or the caps.

When fitting unidirectional tyres, ensure that the direction of rotation is correct » page 163.

WARNING

- Undo the wheel bolts only a little (about one turn) until the vehicle has been jacked up. Otherwise the wheel could become loose and fall off.
- All bolts must be clean and must turn easily.
- If it is established when changing a wheel that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to move, then these must be replaced.
- Under no circumstances grease or oil the wheel bolts!

Subsequent steps

After changing the wheel, the following work should be carried out.

› Stow the replaced wheel in the wheel well and secure it with a special screw.
› Stow the tool kit in the space provided and secure using the strap.
› **Check** the **tyre pressure** on the installed spare wheel as soon as possible.
› Have the **tightening torque** of the wheel bolts **checked** with a torque wrench as soon as possible.

After changing the wheel, the tyre pressure should be adjusted. In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, save tyre pressure values» page 125.

Change the damaged wheel or consult a specialist garage about repair possibilities.

WARNING

Information on the wheel bolts

- The prescribed tightening torque of the wheel bolts for steel and light alloy wheels is 120 Nm.
- If the wheel bolts are tightened to a too low tightening torque, the rim can come loose when the car is moving. A tightening torque which is too high can damage the bolts and threads and this can result in permanent deformation of the contact surfaces on the rim.
- Drive cautiously and only at a moderate speed until the tightening torque has been checked.

Breakdown kit

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Components of the puncture repair kit 172
General information 173
Preparations for using the breakdown kit 173
Sealing and inflating the tyre 173
Notes for driving with tyre repaired 174

Use the breakdown kit to reliably repair tyre damage caused by foreign bodies or a puncture with diameters up to approx. 4 mm.

A repair made using the breakdown kit **is never intended to replace** a permanent repair on the tyre. Its purpose is to get you to the nearest specialist garage.

The wheel need not be removed during the repair.

Do not remove foreign bodies, e.g. screws or nails, from the tyre.

WARNING

- The sealant is hazardous to heath. Remove immediately if it comes into contact with the skin.
- Observe the manufacturer's usage instructions for the breakdown kit.

For the sake of the environment

Used sealant or sealant whose expiry date has passed must be disposed of in accordance with environmental protection regulations.

Note

- A new bottle of sealant can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Parts.
- Immediately replace the wheel that was repaired using the breakdown kit or consult a specialist garage about repair possibilities.

Components of the puncture repair kit

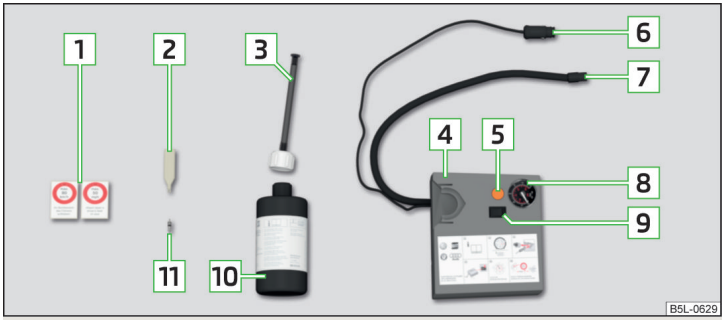


Fig. 177 **Principle sketch: Repair kit components**

Read and observe ! on page 172 first.

Components of the kit » Fig. 177

1 Sticker with "max. 80 km/h"/"max. 50 mph" speed designation
2 Valve remover
3 Inflation hose with plug
4 Air compressor
5 Button for releasing the tyre pressure
6 12 volt cable connector
7 Tyre inflation hose
8 Tyre pressure indicator
9 ON and OFF switch
10 Tyre inflator bottle with sealant
11 Replacement valve core

The valve remover 2 has a slot at its lower end which fits into the valve core.

The kit is located in a box under the floor covering in the luggage compartment. It contains a sealant and an air compressor.

Note

The declaration of conformity is included with the air compressor or the log folder.

General information

Read and observe ! on page 172 first.

For your own safety and the safety of your passengers, the following instructions must be observed before carrying out a wheel repair on the road.

✓ Switch on the hazard lights.
✓ The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.
✓ Park the vehicle as far away as possible from the flow of traffic.
✓ Choose a location with a flat, solid surface.
✓ Have **all the occupants get out.** The passengers should not stand on the road (instead they should remain behind a crash barrier, for instance) while the wheel is being changed.

The national legal requirements must be observed when repairing a tyre.

The breakdown kit must not be used under the following circumstances.
› The rim is damaged.
› The outside temperature is below -20 ° C.
› The cut or puncture is larger than 4 mm.
› The tyre wall is damaged.
› After the expiration date (see inflation bottle).

Preparations for using the breakdown kit

Read and observe ! on page 172 first.

The following preparatory work must be carried out before using the breakdown kit.

› Switch off the engine.
› Select the **first gear** or move the selector lever for the automatic gearbox **into position P**.
› Apply the **handbrake** firmly.
› Check that you can carry out the repairs with the breakdown kit » page 173, *General information*.
› Uncouple trailer, if attached.
› Remove the **breakdown kit** from the boot.
› Stick the corresponding sticker 1 » Fig. 177 *on page 172* on the dashboard in the driver's field of view.
› Unscrew the valve cap.
› Use the valve remover 2 to unscrew the valve core and place it on a clean surface (rag, paper, etc.).

Sealing and inflating the tyre

Read and observe ! on page 172 first.

Sealing
› Shake the tyre inflator bottle 10 » Fig. 177 *on page 172* vigorously several times.
› Firmly screw the inflation hose 3 onto the tyre inflator bottle 10 in a clockwise direction. The film on the cap is pierced automatically.
› Remove the plug from the inflation hose 3 and push the open end fully onto the tyre valve.
› Hold the bottle 10 with the bottom facing upwards and fill all of the sealing agent from the tyre inflator bottle into the tyre.
› Remove the filler plug from the tyre valve.
› Screw the valve core back into the tyre valve using the valve remover 2.

Inflating
› Screw the air compressor tyre inflation hose 7 » Fig. 177 *on page 172*firmly onto the tyre valve.
› For vehicles with **Manual transmission** move the lever into the neutral position and apply the parking brake firmly.
› For vehicles with **Automatic transmission** move the selector lever to position **P** and apply the parking brake firmly.
› Start the engine and run it in idle.
› Plug the connector 6 into 12 volt socket » page 78.
› Switch on the air compressor with the ON and OFF switch 9.
› Allow the air compressor to run until a pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar is achieved. Maximum run time of 8 minutes » !.
› Switch off the air compressor.
› If you cannot reach an air pressure of 2.0 – 2.5 bar, unscrew the tyre inflation hose 7 from the tyre valve.
› Drive the vehicle 10 metres forwards or backwards to allow the sealing agent to "distribute" in the tyre.
› Firmly screw the tyre inflation hose 7 back onto the tyre valve and repeat the inflation process.
› If you still cannot reach the required tyre inflation pressure, this means the tyre has sustained too much damage. You cannot seal with tyre with the breakdown kit » !.
› Switch off the air compressor.

› Remove the tyre inflation hose 7 from the tyre valve.

Once a tyre pressure of 2.0 – 2.5 bar is reached, the journey may be continued at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

WARNING

- If you cannot inflate the tyre to at least 2.0 bar, this means the damage sustained was too serious. The sealing agent cannot be used to seal the tyre. Do not continue to drive! Seek help from a specialist garage.
- The tyre inflation hose and air compressor may get hot while the tyre is being inflated – there is a risk of injury.

CAUTION

Switch off the air compressor after running 8 minutes at the most – risk of overheating. Allow the air compressor to cool a few minutes before switching it on again.

Notes for driving with tyre repaired

Read and observe ! on page 172 first.

The filling pressure of the repaired tyre is a 10-minute test drive.

If the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar or less

› **Do not continue to drive!** You cannot properly seal with tyre with the breakdown kit.

If the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar or more

› Correct the tyre pressure back to the correct value.
› Continue driving carefully to the nearest specialist garage at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

WARNING

- A tyre filled with sealant has the same driving characteristics as a standard tyre.
- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.

Jump-starting

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle ____ 174

The battery of another vehicle can be used to jump-start your vehicle if the engine will not start because the battery is flat.

WARNING

- Pay attention to the warning instructions relating to working in the engine compartment » page 149.
- A discharged vehicle battery can freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C. If the battery is frozen, do not jump start with the battery of another vehicle – risk of explosion.
- Keep any sources of ignition (naked flame, smouldering cigarettes, etc.) away from the battery – risk of explosion!
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with an electrolyte level that is too low – risk of explosion and caustic burns.
- The vent screws of the battery cells must be tightened firmly.

Note

We recommend you buy jump-start cables from a car battery specialist.

Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle

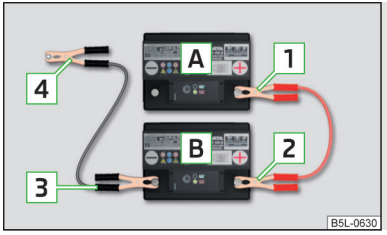


Fig. 178
Jump-starting: A – flat battery, B – battery providing current

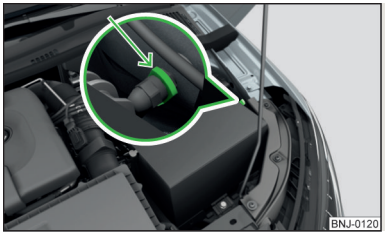


Fig. 179
Engine earth: START-STOP system

Read and observe ! on page 174 first.

The starting process using the battery of another vehicle requires the use of jumper cables.

The jump-start cables must be attached in the following sequence.

› Attach clamp 1 to the positive terminal of the discharged battery A » Fig. 178.
› Attach clamp 2 to the positive terminal of the battery supplying power B.
› Attach clamp 3 to the negative terminal of the battery supplying power B.
› Attach the clamp 4 to a solid metal component firmly connected to the engine block or to the engine block itself.

The jump-start cable must only be connected to the engine earthing point on vehicles with the START-STOP system » Fig. 179.

Starting engine

› Start the engine on the vehicle providing the power and allow it to idle.
› Start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery.
› If the engine does not start, halt the attempt to start the engine after 10 seconds and wait for 30 seconds before repeating the process.
› Detach the jumper cables in the exact **reverse** order that they were attached.

Both batteries must have a rated voltage of 12 V. The **capacity** (Ah) of the battery supplying the power must not be significantly less than the capacity of the discharged battery in your vehicle.

Jump-start cables

Only use jump-start cables which have an adequately large cross-section and insulated terminal clamps. Obey the instructions of the jump start cable manufacturer.

Positive cable - colour coding in the majority of cases is red.

Negative cable - colour coding in the majority of cases is black.

! WARNING

- Do not clamp the jump-start cable to the negative terminal of the discharged battery. There is the risk of detonating gas seeping out the battery being ignited by the strong spark which results from the engine being started.
- The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must never touch each other – risk of short circuit.
- The jump-start cable connected to the positive terminal of the battery must not come into contact with electrically conducting parts of the vehicle – risk of short circuit.
- Route the jump-start cables so that they cannot be caught by any rotating parts in the engine compartment.
- There must not be any contact between the two vehicles otherwise current may flow as soon as the negative terminals are connected.

Towing the vehicle

Introduction

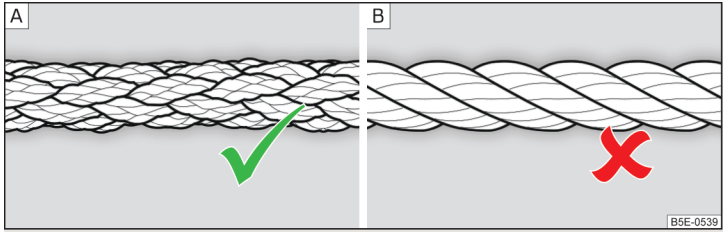


Fig. 180 **Braided tow ropes/spiral tow rope**

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front towing eye 176
Rear towing eye 177
Vehicles with a tow hitch 177

A braided tow rope must be used for towing » Fig. 180 - A.

The following guidelines must be observed when towing.

Vehicles with **manual transmission** may be towed with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front or rear wheels raised.

Vehicles with **automatic transmission** may be towed with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front wheels raised. If the vehicle is raised at rear, the automatic gearbox is damaged!

Driver of the tow vehicle

› Engage the clutch gently when starting off or depress the accelerator particularly gently if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.
› Only then, approach correctly when the rope is taut.

The maximum towing speed is **50 km/h**.

Driver of the towed vehicle

› Switch on the ignition so that the steering wheel is not locked and so that the turn signal lights, windscreen wipers and windscreen washer system can be used.
› Take the vehicle out of gear or move the selector lever into position **N** if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.

Please note that the brake servo unit and power steering only operate if the engine is running. If the engine is not running, significantly more physical force is required to depress the brake pedal and steer the vehicle.

If using a tow rope, ensure that it is always kept taught.

Both drivers should be familiar with the potential issues of towing a vehicle. Unskilled drivers should not attempt to tow another vehicle or to be towed.

The vehicle must be transported on a special breakdown vehicle or trailer if it is not possible to tow the vehicle in the way described or if the towing distance is greater than 50 km.

WARNING

- When towing, respect the national legal provisions, especially those which relate to the identification of the towing vehicle and the vehicle being towed.
- Exercise increased caution when towing.
- Spiral tow ropes must not be used for towing » Fig. 180 - B, the towing eye may unscrew out of the vehicle - risk of accident.
- The tow rope should not be twisted - risk of accident.

CAUTION

- Do not start engine by towing - there is a risk of damaging the engine parts. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 174, *Jump-starting*.
- If the gearbox no longer contains any oil because of a defect, your vehicle must only be towed with the drive wheels raised clear of the ground or on a special breakdown vehicle or trailer.
- To protect both vehicles when tow-starting or towing, the tow rope should be elastic. Thus one should only use plastic fibre rope or a rope made out of a similarly elastic material.
- There is always a risk of excessive stresses and damage resulting at the points to which you attach the tow rope or tow bar when you attempt to tow a vehicle which is not standing on a paved road.
- Attach the tow rope or the tow bar to the **towing eyes** » page 176 or » page 177 to the **detachable ball head of the towing equipment** » page 127.

Note

We recommend using a tow rope from ŠKODA Original Accessories available from a ŠKODA Partner.

Front towing eye



Fig. 181 **Removing the cap / installing the towing eye**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 176 first.

Removing/installing the cap

› Press on the fuel filler flap in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 181.
› Remove the cap in the direction of the arrow 2.
› After unscrewing the cap of the towing eye, insert the cap in the region of the arrow 1 and then press the opposite side of the cap.

The cap must engage firmly.

Removing/installing the towing eye

› Manually screw the towing eye as far as it will go in the direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 181 » !.

For tightening purposes, we recommend, for example, using the wheel wrench, towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be pushed through the eye.

› Unscrew the towing eye against the direction of the arrow 3.

! WARNING

The towing eye must always be screwed in fully and firmly tightened, otherwise the towing eye can tear when towing in or tow-starting.

Rear towing eye



Fig. 182
Rear towing eye

Read and observe ! and ! on page 176 first.

The rear towing eye is located below the rear bumper on the right » Fig. 182.

Vehicles with a tow hitch

Read and observe ! and ! on page 176 first.

The removable towing ball may be fitted and used for towing on vehicles with a factory fitted tow hitch » page 127, *Hitch*.

Towing the vehicle using the towing device is a viable alternative solution to using the towing eye.

! CAUTION

The detachable ball rod and/or the vehicle can be damaged if an unsuitable tow bar is used.

Remote control

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Replacing the battery in the remote control key 177
Synchronising the remote control 178

! CAUTION

- The replacement battery must have the same specification as the original battery.
- We recommend having faulty rechargeable batteries replaced by a ŠKODA service partner.
- Pay attention to the correct polarity when changing the battery.

For the sake of the environment

Dispose of the used battery in accordance with national legal provisions.

Replacing the battery in the remote control key



Fig. 183 **Remove cover/take out battery**

Read and observe ! on page 177 first.

The battery change is carried out as follows.

› Flip out the key.

› Press off the battery cover A » Fig. 183 with your thumb or by using a flat screwdriver in region B.
› Open the battery in the direction of the arrow 1.
› Remove the discharged battery in the direction of arrow 2.
› Insert the new battery.
› Insert the battery cover A and press it down until it clicks audibly into place.

The key has to be synchronised if the vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked with the remote control key after replacing the battery » page 178.

Note

Replacing the battery in the key a glued decorative cover requires the cover to be destroyed. A replacement cover can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Synchronising the remote control

Read and observe ! on page 177 first.

If the vehicle does not unlock when the remote control is pressed, the key may not be synchronised. This can occur when the buttons on the remote control key are actuated a number of times outside of the operative range of the equipment or the battery in the remote control key has been replaced.

Synchronise the key as follows.

› Press any button on the remote control key.
› Unlock the door with the key in the lock cylinder within 1 minute of pressing the button.

Emergency unlocking/locking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Unlocking/locking the driver's door 178
Locking the door without a locking cylinder 179
Unlock the boot lid 179
Selector lever-emergency unlocking 179

Unlocking/locking the driver's door



Fig. 184 **Handle on the driver's door: Covered lock cylinder / lock cylinder with key**

The driver's door can be unlocked or locked in an emergency.

› Pull on the door handle and hold it pulled.
› Insert the vehicle key into the slot on the bottom of the cover » Fig. 184.
› Open the cover in the direction of the arrow.
› Release the door handle.
› For vehicles with **LHD** insert the remote control key **with the buttons facing up** into the lock cylinder and unlock or lock the vehicle.
› For vehicles with **RHD** insert the remote control key **directed with buttons down** into the lock cylinder and unlock or lock the vehicle.
› Pull on the door handle and hold it pulled.
› Replace the cap in its original position.

! CAUTION

Make sure you do not damage the paint when performing an emergency locking/unlocking.

Locking the door without a locking cylinder



Fig. 185 **Emergency locking: Left/right rear door**

An emergency locking mechanism is located on the face side of the doors which have no locking cylinder. It is only visible after opening the door.

› Remove the cover A » Fig. 185.
› Insert the vehicle key into the slot and turn in the direction of the arrow (sprung position).
› Replace the cover A.

Unlock the boot lid

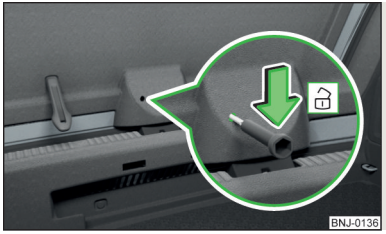


Fig. 186
Unlocking the boot lid

The boot lid can be unlocked manually.

› Insert a screwdriver or similar tool into the opening in the trim » Fig. 186 as far as the stop.
› Unlock the lid by moving it in the direction of the arrow.
› Open the tailgate.

Selector lever-emergency unlocking

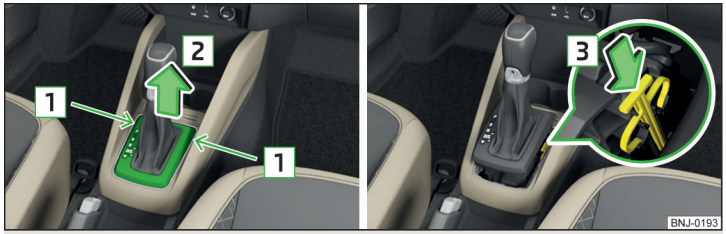


Fig. 187 **Selector lever-emergency unlocking**

› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› Insert a flathead screwdriver into the gap in the arrow range 1 » Fig. 187 and carefully lift the cover in arrow direction 2.
› Likewise lift the cover with your hand as well.
› With one finger, push the yellow plastic element in the direction of arrow 3 down to the stop.
› At the same time, press the locking button in the selector lever and move the selector lever to **N**.

The selector lever will be locked once more if it is moved again to **P**.

Replacing windscreen wiper blades

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Replacing the windscreen wiper blades ____ 180
Replacing the rear window wiper blade ____ 180

WARNING

Replace the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year for safety reasons. These can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Replacing the windscreen wiper blades



Fig. 188 **Windscreen wiper blade**

Read and observe ! on page 179 first.

Adjust the windscreen wiper arms to the service position before replacing the windscreen wiper blades.

Adjusting service position for changing wiper blades

› Close the bonnet.
› Switch the ignition on and off again.
› Push the windscreen wiper lever to position 4 within 10 seconds » page 67, *Windscreen wipers and washers*.
› Hold the lever in this position for about 2 seconds.

Move the windscreen wiper arms into the service position.

Removing the wiper blade

› Lift the wiper arm from the window in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 188.
› Tilt the wiper blade to the stop in the same direction.
› Hold the upper part of the wiper arm and press the securing mechanism A in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow 3.

Fitting the wiper blade

› Push the wiper blade in the opposite direction of the arrow 3 until it locks intoo place.
› Check that the wiper blade is correctly attached.
› Fold the wiper arm back to the windscreen.
› Turn on the ignition and press the lever into position 4 » page 67, *Windscreen wipers and washers*.

Move the windscreen wiper arms into the home position.

Replacing the rear window wiper blade



Fig. 189 **Rear window wiper blade**

Read and observe ! on page 179 first.

Removing the wiper blade

› Lift the wiper arm from the window in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 189.
› Tilt the wiper blade to the stop in the same direction.
› Hold the upper part of the wiper arm and press the securing mechanism A in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow 3.

Fitting the wiper blade

› Push the wiper blade in the opposite direction of the arrow 3 until it locks into place.
› Check that the wiper blade is correctly attached.
› Fold the wiper arm back to the windscreen.

Fuses and light bulbs

Fuses

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Fuses in the dash panel ____ 181
Assignment of the fuses in the dash panel ____ 182
Fuses in the engine compartment ____ 183
Fuse assignment in the engine compartment ____ 183

Individual electrical circuits are protected by fuses.

Switch off the ignition and the corresponding power consuming device before replacing a fuse.

Find out which fuse belongs to the component that is not operating » page 181, *Fuses in the dash panel* or » page 183, *Fuses in the engine compartment*.

Fuse colour	Maximum amperage
light brown	5
dark brown	7.5
red	10
blue	15
yellow/blue	20
white	25
green/pink	30
green	40
red	50

WARNING

Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 149.

CAUTION

- "Never repair" fuses or replace them with a fuse of a higher amperage – risk of fire. This may also cause damage at another part of the electrical system.
- A blown fuse is recognisable by the molten metal strip. Replace the faulty fuse with a new one of the **same** amperage.
- If a new fuse burns through again, consult a specialist immediately.

Note

- We recommend that you always carry replacement fuses in the vehicle. A box of replacement fuses can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- One fuse may cover several consumers.
- A single consumer may use several fuses.

Fuses in the dash panel

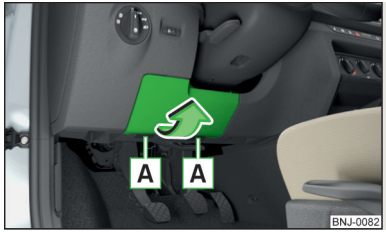


Fig. 190
Remove the cover

Read and observe ! and ! on page 181 first.

The fuses are located on the bottom of the dash panel behind a cover.

Replacing fuses

› Remove the cover of the fuse box » Fig. 190 in the direction of the arrow.
› Remove the plastic clip from the holder in the fuse box cover.
› Place the clamp on the respective fuse and pull this fuse out.
› Insert a new fuse.
› Replace the clamp in the original position.
› Insert the top edge of the cover into the dash panel first.
› Push the lower edge of the cover in the region A.

Assignment of the fuses in the dash panel

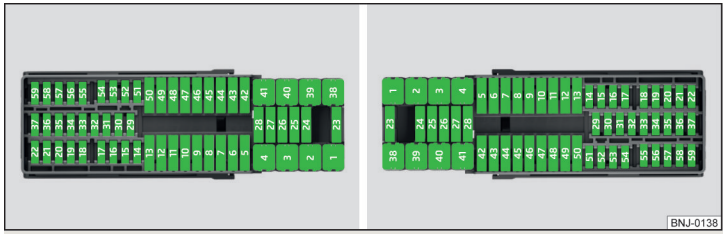


Fig. 191 **Schematic representation of the fuse box for vehicles with left-hand steering/right-hand steering**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 181 first.

No.	Power consumer
1	Left parking light, parking light, high-mounted brake light
2	Central locking system
3	Relay for ignition
4	Right-hand light, rear fog light, license plate light
5	Power windows - driver
6	Central control unit, interior lighting
7	Horn
8	Towing hitch - left light
9	Operating lever beneath the steering wheel, engine control unit (only without KESSY), automatic gearbox (only without KESSY), selector lever of the automatic gearbox (only without KESSY), ESC (only without KESSY), control unit for trailer detection (only without KESSY), power steering (only without KESSY), airbag (only without KESSY)
10	Power windows - rear left
11	Headlight cleaning system
12	Radio display
13	12 volt socket in luggage compartment
14	Operating lever under the steering wheel, light switch, ignition key removal lock (automatic gearbox), diagnostic connector, headlight flasher, SmartGate controller, rain sensor, light sensor
15	Control unit for air conditioning system, selector lever of the automatic gearbox
16	Instrument cluster
17	Alarm system, horn
18	Not assigned
19	Not assigned
20	Not assigned
21	Not assigned
22	Front- and rear windscreen wiper system
23	Not assigned
24	Blower fan for air conditioning system, heating, control unit for air conditioning, heating
25	Not assigned
26	Switch for front seat heating
27	Rear window wiper
28	Not assigned
29	Airbag (only with KESSY)
30	Power windows, light switches, reverse light switches, control unit for air conditioning system, control unit for park assist, exterior mirror, power feed for centre button strip, power feed for side button strip, interior mirror
31	Fuel pump, control unit for radiator fan, cruise control, coil of the relay for the front and rear windscreen wipers
32	Diagnostic connector, headlight range adjustment
33	Coil on starter relay, clutch pedal switch
34	Heated windscreen washer jets
35	Not assigned
36	Heated front seats
37	Radar
38	Not assigned
39	Electrical auxiliary heating system
40	Not assigned
41	Rear window heater

No.	Power consumer
42	Power windows - front passenger
43	Towing hitch - contact in the socket
44	Cigarette lighter, 12-volt power socket
45	Power windows - rear right
46	Front and rear window washer, operating lever under the steering wheel
47	Towing hitch - contact in the socket
48	Towing hitch - right light
49	Control unit for fuel pump
50	Radio
51	Heating of the external mirror
52	KESSY control unit
53	KESSY steering lock
54	Not assigned
55	Heated front seats
56	Not assigned
57	Not assigned
58	Not assigned
59	Not assigned

Fuses in the engine compartment

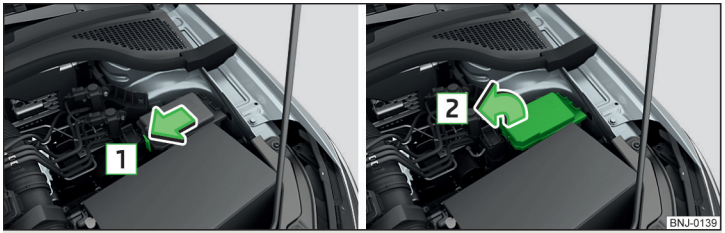


Fig. 192 **Remove the cover**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 181 first.

Replacing fuses

› Press the lock button on the cover in direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 192.
› Raise the cover and remove in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Remove the plastic clip from the holder on the cover of the fuse box in the dash panel.
› Replace the appropriate fuse.
› Replace the clamp in the original position.
› Place the cover on top of the fuse box.
› Push in the locking button on the cover and lock.

The cover must engage securely.

Fuse assignment in the engine compartment

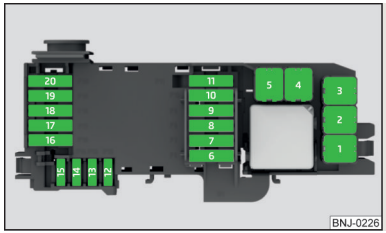


Fig. 193
Fuses

Read and observe ! and ! on page 181 first.

No.	Power consumer
1	Radiator fan
2	Control unit for glow plug system
3	Control unit for ABS/ESC
4	Electrical auxiliary heating system
5	Electrical auxiliary heating system
6	Automatic gearbox
7	Engine control unit
8	Windscreen wipers
9	Central control unit, battery data module
10	Control unit for ABS/ESC

No.	Power consumer
11	Not assigned
12	Engine components
13	Brake pedal switch
14	Engine components, coil of the fuel pump relay
15	Engine control unit
16	Starter
17	Engine control unit
18	Engine components, coils of the relay for auxiliary electric heater, radiator fan
19	Lambda probe
20	Engine components, control unit for glow plug system, heating the crankcase ventilation

Replacing bulbs

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Bulb arrangement in the headlights 185
Removing and installing the cover in the front wheel arch 185
Fitting and removing the wash water container nozzle 185
Replacing the low beam and high beam bulb (halogen headlights) 186
Change bulb for turn signal switch (halogen headlight) 186
Replacing the parking light bulb (halogen headlights) 187
Changing bulb for daytime running lights switch (halogen headlight) 187
Replacing the dipped beam bulb (halogen projector headlights) 187
Replacing the high beam bulb (halogen projector headlights) 188
Replacing the turn signal switch bulb (halogen projector headlights) 188
Replacing the bulb for the fog light 189
Changing the licence plate light bulb 189
Rear Light 190
Replacing bulbs in rear light 190

Some manual skills are required to change a bulb. For this reason, if uncertain, we recommend that bulbs are replaced by a specialist garage or other expert help is sought.

› Switch off the ignition and all of the lights before replacing a bulb.
› Faulty bulbs must only be replaced with the same type of bulbs. The designation is located on the light socket or the glass bulb.
› A stowage compartment for replacement bulbs is located in a plastic box in the spare wheel or underneath the floor covering in the boot.

WARNING

- Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 149.
- Accidents can be caused if the road in front of the vehicle is not sufficiently illuminated and the vehicle cannot or can only be seen with difficulty by other road users.
- Bulbs H8, H7 and H4 are pressurised and may burst when changed - there is a risk of injury! We therefore recommended wearing gloves and safety glasses when changing a bulb.
- Switch off the respective vehicle light when changing the bulb.

CAUTION

Do not take hold of the glass bulb with naked fingers (even the smallest amount of dirt reduces the working life of the light bulb). Use a clean cloth, napkin, or similar.

Note

- This Owner's Manual only describes the replacement of bulbs where it is possible to replace the bulbs on your own without any complications arising. Other light bulbs should be changed by your specialist garage.
- We recommend that you always carry a box of replacement bulbs in the vehicle. Replacement bulbs can be purchased from ŠKODAOriginal Accessories.
- We recommend having the headlight settings checked by a specialist garage after replacing a bulb in the main beam, low beam or fog lights.
- Visit a specialist garage if an LED is faulty.

Bulb arrangement in the headlights

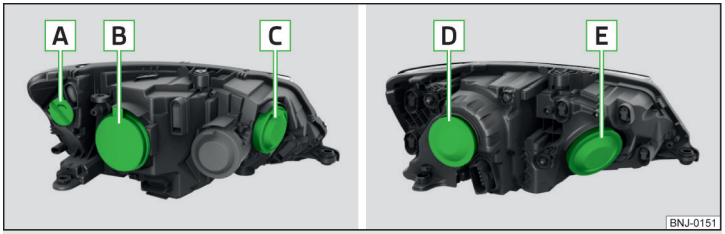


Fig. 194 **Principle sketch: Halogen headlights/halogen projector headlights**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 184 first.

The vehicle is equipped with headlights with halogen bulbs.

Bulb arrangement » Fig. 194

A Dayl. dri. light
B Low beam, high beam and parking light
C Flashing
D Low beam
E High beam and turning signal switch

Removing and installing the cover in the front wheel arch

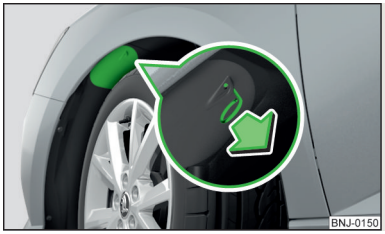


Fig. 195
Remove the plastic cover

Read and observe ! and ! on page 184 first.

The cover in the front wheel must be removed in order to change certain light bulbs.

Details about removing the cover - if needed - are given in the description of each lamp change.

Removing

› Adjust front wheels in the direction of centre of the vehicle.
› Insert the clamp for removing the full wheel covers » page 167, *Vehicle tool kit* into the recess in the cover.
› Remove the cover by pulling the hook in the direction of arrow » Fig. 195.

Fitting

› Insert and push the cover into the corresponding opening.

The cover must engage securely.

Fitting and removing the wash water container nozzle

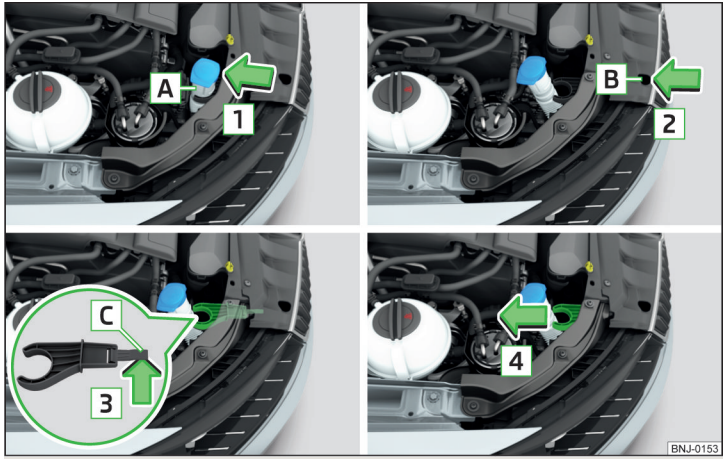


Fig. 196 **Remove the holder of the wash water container nozzle**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 184 first.

The holder of the wash water container nozzle must be removed in order to replace some light bulbs. The holder is located in the engine compartment, front right.

Details about removing the holder - if needed - are given in each lamp replacement description .

Removing

› Unclip the container nozzle A from the holder in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 196.
› Insert a finger into the recess B in the direction of arrow 2 and lift the catch C in the direction of arrow 3.
› Remove the holder of the container nozzle in the direction of arrow 4.

Fitting

› Slide the holder of the container nozzle in the opposite direction to the arrow 4 » Fig. 196.

The holder must engage firmly.

› Push the container nozzle into the holder in the opposite direction to the arrow 1.

Replacing the low beam and high beam bulb (halogen headlights)

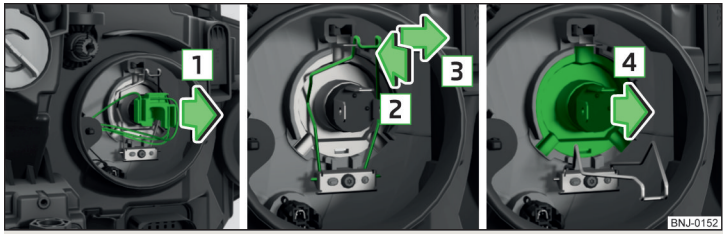


Fig. 197 **Replacing the bulb for low beam and main beam**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 184 first.

› Remove the relevant cover in the front wheel arch » page 185.

To replace lamp, first remove the bracket of the wash water container nozzle in the right headlight » page 185.

› Remove the protective cap B » Fig. 194 *on page 185*.
› Press the connector latch and remove the plug connector by jiggling in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 197.
› Push in the spring in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Release the spring in the direction of the arrow 3.
› Remove the defective bulb in the direction of arrow 4.
› Fit a new bulb into the headlamp and secure the spring in the opposite direction to the arrow 3.
› Insert the plug in the opposite direction to the arrow 1.
› Fit protective cap B » Fig. 194 *on page 185*.

After changing the lamp in the right headlamp, replace the holder of the wash water container nozzle » page 185.

› Replace the appropriate cover in the front wheel arch » page 185.

Change bulb for turn signal switch (halogen headlight)



Fig. 198
Changing the bulb for the front turn signal light

Read and observe ! and ! on page 184 first.

Remove the holder of the wash water container nozzle before replacing the lamp in the right headlight » page 185.

› Remove the protective cap C » Fig. 194 *on page 185*.
› Turn the socket with the bulb in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 198.
› Remove the socket with the bulb in the direction of arrow 2.
› Insert the socket with the new bulb in the opposite direction to the arrow 2.
› Turn the socket with the new bulb in the opposite direction to the arrow 1 until it stops.
› Fit protective cap C » Fig. 194 *on page 185*.

Replacing the parking light bulb (halogen headlights)

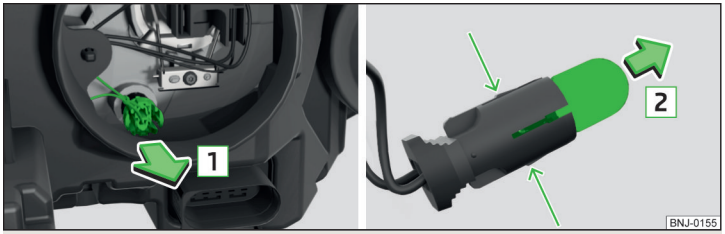


Fig. 199 **Change the light bulb for the parking light**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 184 first.

› Remove the relevant cover in the front wheel arch » page 185.

Remove the holder of the wash water container nozzle before replacing the lamp in the right headlight » page 185.

› Remove the protective cap B » Fig. 194 *on page 185*.
› Remove the bulb holder with the bulb by jiggling it out in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 199.
› Grasp the lamp socket at the places marked by arrows.
› Remove the faulty bulb from the holder in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Push a new bulb into the bulb holder up to the stop.
› Replace the bulb holder in the headlamp with the bulb.
› Fit protective cap B » Fig. 194 *on page 185*.

After changing the lamp in the right headlamp, replace the holder of the wash water container nozzle » page 185.

› Replace the appropriate cover in the front wheel arch » page 185.

Changing bulb for daytime running lights switch (halogen headlight)

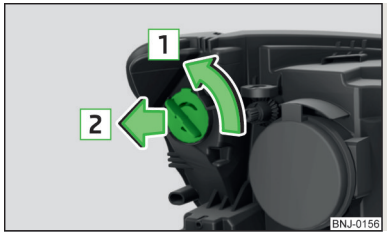


Fig. 200
Changing the bulb for the daytime running light

Read and observe ! and ! on page 184 first.

› Remove the relevant cover in the front wheel arch » page 185.
› Turn the socket with the bulb in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 200.
› Remove the socket with the bulb in the direction of arrow 2.
› Change the bulb in the socket.
› Insert the socket with the new bulb into the headlight in the opposite direction to the arrow 2.
› Turn the socket with the new bulb in the opposite direction to the arrow 1 until it stops.
› Replace the appropriate cover in the front wheel arch » page 185.

Replacing the dipped beam bulb (halogen projector headlights)

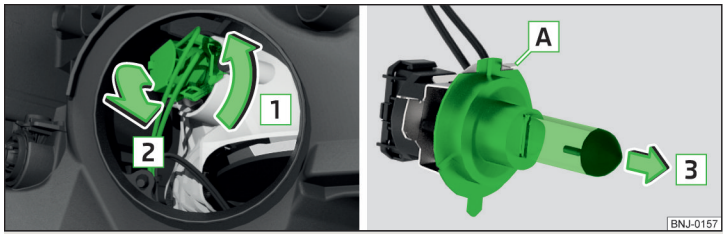


Fig. 201 **Changing the bulb for the low beam**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 184 first.

› Remove the relevant cover in the front wheel arch » page 185.

› Remove the protective cap D » Fig. 194 *on page 185*.
› Turn the holder with the bulb in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 201.
› Remove the holder with the bulb in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the bulb from the holder in the direction of the arrow 3.
› Insert a new bulb into the connector so that the lug A on the connector snaps into the groove on the bulb.
› Insert the connector with the new bulb into the headlight in the opposite direction to the arrow 2.
› Turn the connector with the new bulb in the opposite direction to the arrow 1 until it stops.
› Fit protective cap D » Fig. 194 *on page 185*.
› Replace the appropriate cover in the front wheel arch » page 185.

Replacing the high beam bulb (halogen projector headlights)



Fig. 202 **Changing the bulb for the main beam**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 184 first.

Remove the holder of the wash water container nozzle before replacing the lamp in the right headlight » page 185.

› Remove the protective cap E » Fig. 194 *on page 185*.
› Turn the holder with the bulb in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 202.
› Remove the holder with the bulb in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the bulb from the holder in the direction of the arrow 3.
› Insert a new bulb into the connector so that the lug A on the connector snaps into the groove on the bulb.
› Insert the connector with the new bulb into the headlight in the opposite direction to the arrow 2.
› Turn the connector with the new bulb in the opposite direction to the arrow 1 until it stops.
› Fit protective cap E » Fig. 194 *on page 185*.

After changing the lamp in the right headlamp, replace the holder of the wash water container nozzle » page 185.

Replacing the turn signal switch bulb (halogen projector headlights)

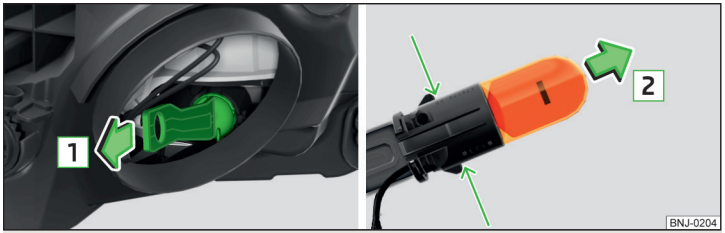


Fig. 203 **Changing the bulb for the turn signal light**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 184 first.

To replace lamp, first remove the bracket of the wash water container nozzle in the right headlight » page 185.

› Remove the protective cap E » Fig. 194 *on page 185*.
› Remove the bulb holder with the bulb by jiggling it out in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 203.
› Grasp the lamp socket at the places marked by arrows.
› Remove the faulty bulb from the holder in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Push a new bulb into the bulb holder up to the stop.
› Replace the bulb holder in the headlamp with the bulb.
› Fit protective cap E » Fig. 194 *on page 185*.

After changing the lamp in the right headlamp, replace the holder of the wash water container nozzle » page 185.

Replacing the bulb for the fog light

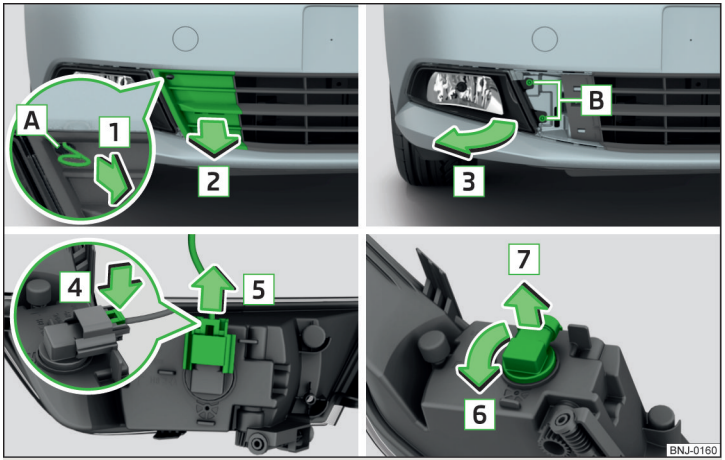


Fig. 204 **Removing the fog lamp / changing bulb for fog light switch**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 184 first.

Remove the protective grille and headlight

› Insert the clamps for removing the full wheel covers into opening A » page 167, *Vehicle tool kit*.
› Loosen the protective grille by pulling the hook in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 204.
› Grasp the guard with the hand and remove by pulling in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Unscrew the screws B with the screwdriver from the tool kit » page 167.
› Remove the headlight in the direction of arrow 3.

Replacing the light bulb

› Push in the latch on the connector in the direction of arrow 4 » Fig. 204.
› Remove the key in the direction of the arrow 5.
› Turn the socket with the bulb to the stop in the direction of the arrow 6.
› Remove the socket with the bulb in the direction of arrow 7.
› Insert the new bulb into the headlight and turn counter to the direction of arrow 6 as far as the stop.
› Attach the connector.

Refit the headlight and grille

› Replace the fog light by inserting it in the opposite direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 204 and tightening.
› Insert the protective grille and carefully press it in.

The protective grille must engage firmly.

Changing the licence plate light bulb

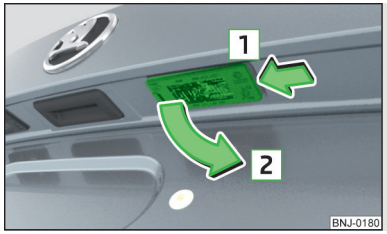


Fig. 205
Remove the licence plate light

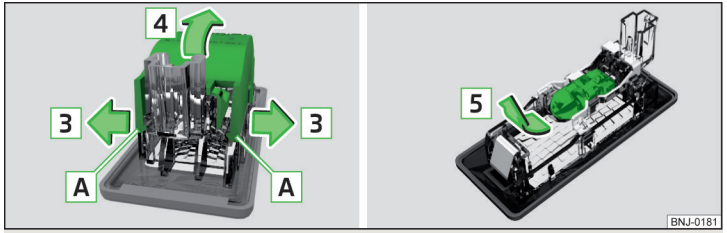


Fig. 206 **Remove the cover / replace the bulb**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 184 first.

› Open the tailgate.
› Push in the lamp in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 205.

The lamp comes loose.

› Swivel out the lamp in the direction of the arrow 2 and remove it.
› Remove the cap of the lamp in range A and in the direction of arrow 3 » Fig. 206.

› Remove the cap of the light in the direction of arrow 4.
› Remove the faulty bulb from the holder in the direction of the arrow 5.
› Insert a new bulb into the holder.
› Clip in the cap of the lamp counter to the direction of arrow 4.
› Reinsert the lamp in the opposite direction to the arrow 1.
› Push on the light until the spring clicks into place.

Check that the light is securely inserted.

› Shut the boot lid.

Rear Light

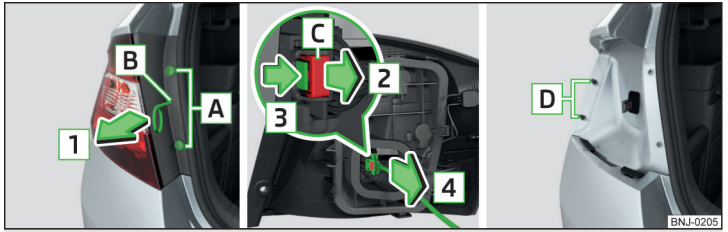


Fig. 207 **Remove light / pull out connector**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 184 first.

Removing

› Open the tailgate.
› Unscrew the screws A with the screwdriver from the tool kit » page 167.
› Into the opening B insert the clamps for removing the full wheel trims, directed with the eyelet downward (in the right light with the eyelet upward).
› Grasp the light with the palm of the hand and remove carefully in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 207 from the pin D.
› Press the latch C on the holder in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Press the latch in the direction of arrow 3 and pull out the holder in the direction of arrow 4.

Fitting

› Insert the bulb holder into the lamp.
› Tighten the lock in the opposite direction to the arrow 2 » Fig. 207.
› Insert the lamp with the holes B » Fig. 208 *on page 190* onto the pins D » Fig. 207 in the body.
› Carefully press the light into the pins on the bodywork » !.

Ensure that the wiring harness does not become pinched between the body and the lamp.

› Screw the light into place.

! CAUTION

- Ensure that the wiring harness does not become pinched between the body and the lamp when it is being refitted – risk of damage to the electrical installation and risk of water ingress.
- If you are not sure whether the wiring harness has become pinched, we recommend that you have the light connection checked by a specialist garage.
- Ensure that the vehicle paintwork and the tail lamp are not damaged when removing and installing the tail lamp.

Replacing bulbs in rear light

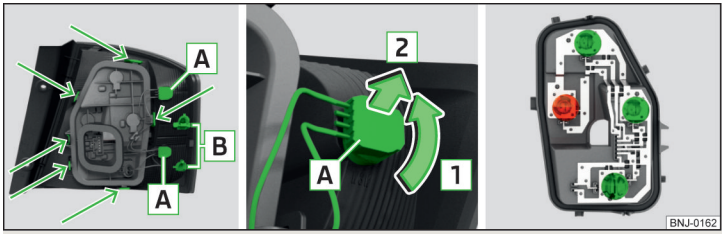


Fig. 208 **Outer part of the lamp / removing the bulb / lamp holder**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 184 first.

Changing the bulb in the outer part of the lamp

› Turn the holder with the bulb A in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 208.
› Remove the socket with the bulb from the lamp housing in the direction of arrow 2.
› Jiggle the bulb to remove.
› Insert a new bulb into the socket.
› Reinsert the holder with the bulb into the lamp housing and turn in the opposite direction of the arrow 1 to the stop.

Changing the bulb in the inner part of the lamp

› Turn the holders with the bulbs A in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 208.

› Remove the holders with the bulbs from the lamp housing in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Release the bulb holder in the areas identified by arrows » Fig. 208.
› Remove the holder from the lamp.
› Turn the respective light bulb **counter-clockwise** to the stop and remove it from the bulb holder.
› Insert a new bulb into the holder and turn **in a clockwise direction** to the stop.
› Insert the bulb holder in the light.

The lamp holder must engage firmly.

› Reinsert the holders with the bulbs into the lamp housing and turn in the opposite direction of the arrow 1.

Technical data

Technical data

Vehicle data

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Vehicle characteristics ____ 192
Operating weight and payload ____ 193
measurement of fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions according to ECE Regulations and EU Directives ____ 193
Dimensions ____ 194
Departure angle ____ 195
Vehicle-specific details per engine type ____ 196

The details given in the vehicle's technical documentation always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual.

The listed performance values were determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system.

Vehicle characteristics

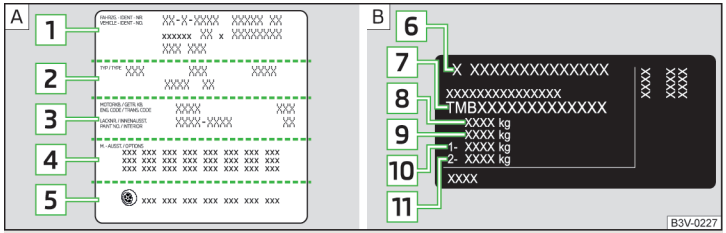


Fig. 209 **Vehicle data sticker/type plate**

Vehicle data sticker

The vehicle data sticker » Fig. 209 - A is located on the base of the luggage compartment and is also stuck inside the service schedule.

The vehicle data sticker contains the following data.

1 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
2 Vehicle type
3 Gearbox code / paint number / interior equipment / engine output / engine code
4 Partial vehicle description
5 Approved tyre diameter in inches[1)]

The approved tyres and rim sizes for your vehicle are listed in the vehicle's technical documentation (the so called COC document) and this also states the declaration of conformity.

Type plate

The type plate » Fig. 209 - B is located at the bottom of the B-pillar on the right-hand driver's side.

The type plate contains the following data.

6 Manufacturer
7 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
8 Maximum permissible gross weight
9 Maximum permissible towed weight (towing vehicle and trailer)
10 Maximum permissible front axle load
11 Maximum permissible rear axle load

Vehicle identification number (VIN)

The vehicle identification number - VIN (vehicle body number) is stamped on the right hand suspension strut dome in the engine compartment. This number is also located on a sign on the lower left hand edge below the windscreen (together with a VIN bar code), together with a nameplate.

The VIN number can also be displayed in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

Engine number

The engine number (three-digit code letter and serial number) is stamped onto the engine block.

[1)] Only valid for some countries.

Supplementary Information (applies to Russia)
The full type approval number of the means of transport is indicated in the registration documents, field 17.

! WARNING
Do not exceed the specified maximum permissible weights – risk of an accident and damage.

Operating weight and payload

Operating weight
This value represents the minimum operating weight without additional weight-increasing equipment such as air conditioning system, spare wheel, or trailer hitch.

The specified operating weight is for orientation purposes only.

The operating weight also contains the weight of the driver (75 kg), the weight of the operating fluids, the tool kit, and a fuel tank filled to 90 % capacity.

Operating weight of the vehicle » page 196, *Vehicle-specific details per engine type* .

Payload
It is possible to calculate the approximate loading capacity from the difference between the permissible total weight and the operating weight.

The payload consists of the following weights.
› The weight of the passengers.
› The weight of all items of luggage and other loads.
› The weight of the roof, including the roof rack system.
› The weight of the equipment that is excluded from the operating weight.
› Trailer drawbar load when towing a trailer (max. 50 kg).

i Note
If required, you can find out the precise weight of your vehicle by contacting a specialist garage.

measurement of fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions according to ECE Regulations and EU Directives

The data on fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions were not available at the time of going to press.

The data on fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions are given on the ŠKODA websites or in the sales and technical vehicle documentation.

The measurement of the intra-urban cycle begins with a cold start of the engine. Urban driving is then simulated.

In the extra-urban driving cycle, the vehicle is accelerated and decelerated in all gears, corresponding to daily routine driving conditions. The driving speed varies between 0 and 120 km/h.

The calculation of the combined fuel consumption considers a weighting of about 37 % for the intra-urban cycle and 63 % for the extra-urban cycle.

i Note
▪ The fuel consumption and emission levels given on the Škoda websites or in the commercial and technical vehicle documentation have been established in accordance with rules and under conditions that are set out by legal or technical rules for the determination of operational and technical data of motor vehicles.
▪ Depending on the extent of the equipment, the driving style, traffic conditions, weather influences and vehicle condition, consumption values can in practice result in fuel economy figures in the use of the vehicle that differ from the fuel consumption values listed on the ŠKODA websites or in the commercial and technical vehicle documentation.

Dimensions

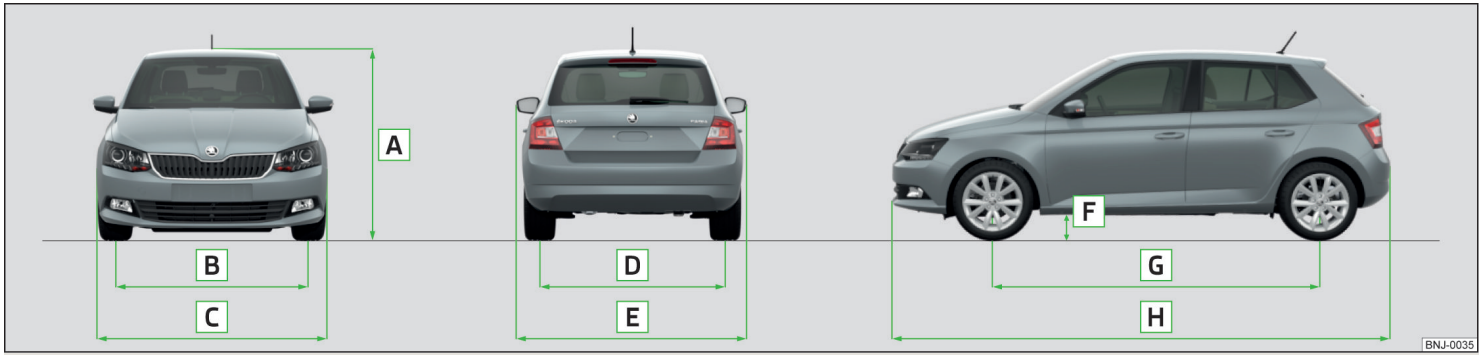


Fig. 210 **Principle sketch: Vehicle dimensions**

Vehicle dimensions by operating weight without driver (in mm)

» Fig. 210	Specification		Fabia	Fabia Combi
A	Height	Basic dimension	1467	1467
		Vehicles with off-road package	1482	1482
		Vehicles with SPORT package	1452	1452
B	Front track	Basic dimension	1463	1463
		Vehicles with the 1.2 l/81 kW TSI and 1.4 l/77 kW TDI engine	1457	1457
C	Width		1732	1732
D	Rear track	Basic dimension	1457	1457
		Vehicles with the 1.2 l/81 kW TSI and 1.4 l/77 kW TDI engine	1451	1451
E	Width including exterior mirrors		1958	1958
F	Clearance	Basic dimension	133	135
		Vehicles with off-road package	141	143
		Vehicles with SPORT package	118	120
G	Wheelbase		2470	2470
H	Length		3992	4257

Departure angle



Fig. 211
Principle sketch: Departure angle

Angle » Fig. 211

A Overhang angle, front

B Overhang angle, rear

Departure angle

The values shown indicate the maximum incline of an embankment, up which the vehicle can drive at a slow speed without collision of the bumper or underbody.

The values listed correspond to the maximum axle load, front or back.

Overhang angle (°)

» Fig. 211	Fabia	Fabia Combi
A	14.6	14.6
B	17.6	13.1

Vehicle-specific details per engine type

The values specified have been determined in accordance with rules and under conditions set out by legal or technical requirements for determining operational and technical data for motor vehicles.

1.0 l/44 kW MPI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
44/5000-6000	95/3000-4300	3/999

Performance and weights		Fabia MG5
Top speed (km/h)		160
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h (s)		15.7
Operating weight (kg)		1055
Permissible trailer weight braked (kg)	Gradients of up to 12 %	800
	Gradients of up to 8 %	1000
Permissible trailer weight unbraked (kg)		520

1.0 l/55 kW MPI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
55/6200	95/3000-4300	3/999

Performance and weights		Fabia MG5 EU6	Fabia MG5 EU4	Fabia Estate MG5 EU6	Fabia Estate MG5 EU4
Top speed (km/h)		172	172	175	175
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h (s)		14.7	14.7	14.9	14.9
Operating weight (kg)		1055	1050	1079	1074
Permissible trailer weight braked (kg)	Gradients of up to 12 %	800	800	800	800
	Gradients of up to 8 %	1000	1000	1000	1000
Permissible trailer weight unbraked (kg)		520	520	530	530

1.2 ltr./66 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders / displacement (cm^3)
66/4400-5400	160/1400-3500	4/1197

Performance and weights		Fabia MG5	Fabia Combi MG5
Top speed (km/h)		182	185
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h (s)		10.9	11.0
Operating weight (kg)		1109	1133
Permissible trailer weight braked (kg)	Gradients of up to 12 %	1000	1000
	Gradients of up to 8 %	1100	1100
Permissible trailer weight unbraked (kg)		550	560

1.2 ltr. / 81 kW TSI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
81/4600-5600	175/1400-4000	4/1197

Performance and weights		Fabia MG6	Fabia DSG7	Fabia Combi MG6	Fabia Combi DSG7
Top speed (km/h)		196	196	199	199
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h (s)		9.4	9.4	9.6	9.6
Operating weight (kg)		1129	1154	1153	1178
Permissible trailer weight braked (kg)	Gradients of up to 12 %	1100	1100	1100	1100
	Gradients of up to 8 %	1100	1100	1100	1100
Permissible trailer weight unbraked (kg)		560	570	570	580

1.6 l/66 kW MPI engine

Output (kW at rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
66/4250-6000	155/3800-4000	4/1598

Driving performances		Fabia MG5	Fabia Combi MG5
Top speed (km/h)		181	184
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h (s)		11.0	11.1
Operating weight (kg)		1086	1110
Permissible trailer weight braked (kg)	Gradients of up to 12 %	1100	1100
	Gradients of up to 8 %	1200	1200
Permissible trailer weight unbraked (kg)		540	550

1.6 l/81 kW MPI engine

Output (kW at rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
81/5800	155/3800-4000	4/1598

Driving performances		Fabia MG5	Fabia AG6	Fabia Combi MG5	Fabia Combi AG6
Top speed (km/h)		190	190	190	190
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h (s)		9.8	11.0	9.9	11.1
Operating weight (kg)		1086	1126	1110	1150
Permissible trailer weight braked (kg)	Gradients of up to 12 %	1100	1100	1100	1100
	Gradients of up to 8 %	1200	1200	1200	1200
Permissible trailer weight unbraked (kg)		540	560	550	570

1.4 l/66 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
66/3000-3250	230/1750-2500	3/1422

Performance and weights		Fabia MG5	Fabia DSG7	Fabia Combi MG5	Fabia Combi DSG7
Top speed (km/h)		182	182	184	184
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h (s)		11.1	11.1	11.3	11.3
Operating weight (kg)		1156	1186	1180	1210
Permissible trailer weight braked (kg)	Gradients of up to 12 %	1100	1100	1100	1100
	Gradients of up to 8 %	1200	1200	1200	1200
Permissible trailer weight unbraked (kg)		570	590	590	600

1.4 l/77 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Maximum torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
77/3500-3750	250/1750-2500	3/1422

Performance and weights		Fabia MG5	Fabia Combi MG5
Top speed (km/h)		193	196
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h (s)		10.1	10.2
Operating weight (kg)		1165	1189
Permissible trailer weight braked (kg)	Gradients of up to 12 %	1100	1100
	Gradients of up to 8 %	1200	1200
Permissible trailer weight unbraked (kg)		580	590

Index

Numbers and Symbols

12-volt power outlet 78

A

abroad
lead-free petrol 148
Abroad
Headlights 64
ABS
Operation 115
Warning light 33
Acceptance and recycling of used vehicles 139
Accessories 136
Adjusting
Exterior mirrors 69
headrests 70
Seat 70
Steering wheel 9
Adjusting the seats 8
Adjustment
Headlight beam 60
Adjustments and technical changes
Spoiler 138
Adjustments and technical modifications
Airbags 138
Advance warning/emergency braking
Warning light 38
Air-conditioning system
Air outlet vents 95
Airbag 14
Adjustments and impairment of the airbag system 138
Deactivating 18
Deployment 15
Front airbag 16
Head airbag 18
Side airbag 17
Switching off the front passenger airbag 19
Warning light 34
Airbag system 14
Air conditioning 94
Climatronic 97
manual air conditioning 97
Recirculated air mode 96
Air outlet vents 95
Alarm
Switching off 54
Triggering 54
Alcantara
cleaning 145
Anodized parts
Refer to vehicle maintenance 142
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 115
Anti-theft alarm system
Activating/deactivating 54
Trailer 134
Anti-theft wheel bolts 169
Armrest 72
artificial leather 145
Ashtray 77
Assembling the
bar ball, Step 1 129
bar ball, Step 2 130
Assist systems 114
Auto-check control 39
Automatic driving lamp control 61
Automatic gearbox
Selector lever-emergency unlocking 179
Selector lever lock 110
Starting-off and driving 111
Tiptronic 110
Using the selector lever 109
Automatic gearbox modes 109
Automatic load deactivation 159
automatic transmission
selector lever lock defect 110
Automatic transmission 108
Kickdown 111
Selector lever lock 110
Automatic Transmission
Malfunction 36
Warning light 36
warning messages 36
AUX 82
Avoiding damage to your vehicle 113

B

Ball head
Check fitting 130
Ready position 128, 129
Battery
In the remote control key 177
Belts 11
Belt tensioners 14
Bicycle carrier 90
Bonnet
Closing 151
Opening 151
Boot
Class N1 vehicles 88
Hooks 85
See Boot lid 56
Boot lid
automatic locking 56
Closing 56
Opening 56
Brake Assist (HBA) 115
Brake booster 106
brake fluid
specification 156
Brake fluid 155
Checking 156
Information messages 32
Brake pedal (automatic transmission)
Indicator light 35

Brakes
Brake booster 106
Brake fluid 156
Braking and stabilisation systems 114
Handbrake 107
Information messages 32
Running-in 111
Warning light 32
Brakes and parking 106
Brake system 114
Braking
Information for braking 106
Breakdown kit 172
Bulbs
Replacing 184
Button CAR
see Infotainment 4
Button in driver's door
electric windows 57

C

Car care
Jack 143
Car computer
see multifunction display 40
Care and maintenance 136
Car park 107
Car park ticket holder 75
Carrier
Roof rack 93
Cavity protection 143
Central locking 49
Problems 53
Central locking button 53
Change
Bulb for daytime running lights (halogen spotlight) 187
Bulb for indicator (halogen headlight) 186
Engine oil 152
Light bulb in tail light 190
Changing
Fuses 181
Fuses in the dash panel 181
Fuses in the engine compartment 183
Licence plate light bulb 189
Wheels 168
Changing a wheel
Preparation 168
Subsequent steps 171
Changing wheels
Wheel removal and fix 171
Charging a vehicle battery 158
Check
Fit ball head properly 130
Checking
Battery electrolyte level 158
Brake fluid 156
Coolant level 155
Engine oil 153
Oil level 153
Windscreen washer fluid 152
Checks
Statutory checks 136
Children and safety 20
Child safety
Side airbag 22
Child safety lock 53
Child safety seat
Use of child safety seats 22
child seat
Use of ISOFIX child seats 23
Child seat
Classification 22
ISOFIX 22
on the front passenger seat 21
TOP TETHER 24
Chrome parts
Refer to vehicle maintenance 142
Cigarette lighter 77
Clean
Anodized parts 142
Chrome parts 142
Cleaning
Alcantara 145
and maintaining belts 146
artificial leather 145
headlight glasses 143
materials 145
natural leather 145
plastic parts 141
seats covers of the electrically heated seats 146
wheels 143
Cleaning safety
belt 146
Cleaning seat
covers 146
Cleaning the interior
artificial leather 145
Seat covers 146
Cleaning the vehicle exterior
Cavity protection 143
Door locking cylinder 143
Headlight glasses 143
Towing device 144
Under-body protection 144
wheels 143
Windows and external mirrors 142
Cleaning vehicle 139
Cleaning vehicle exterior 140
Anodized parts 142
Chrome parts 142
Decorative foils 142
Plastic parts 141
Protective foils 142
Rubber seals 141
Vehicle paint work 141
Wiper blades 144

Clean interior
Safety belt 146
Climatronic
Operating elements 97
Recirculated air mode 96
Clothes hook 81
Cockpit
12-volt power outlet 78
Ashtray 77
Cigarette lighter 77
General view 26
Lighting 64
Storage compartments 74
useful equipment 74
COMING HOME 63
compartments 74
Component protection 138
Components of the puncture repair kit 172
Computer
see multifunction display 40
Convenience turn signal 61
Coolant 154
Checking 155
Replenishing 155
Temperature gauge 29
Warning light 36
Warning messages 36
Cooling system
Malfunctions 99
CORNER
See Fog lights with CORNER function 62
Correct routing of seat belt 12
Correct seated position 8
Front passenger 10
Rear seats 10
Correct seat position
Driver 9
Counter for distance driven 30
cruise control
operation 119
operation description 119
Cup holders 76

D

DAY LIGHT
see Daylight running lights 60
Daylight running lights 60
Dazzle
see sun screen of the panoramic roof 66
De-icing
windows 142
De-icing rear window 65
Deactivating airbags 18
Decorative foils 142
Delayed locking of the boot lid
see boot lid 56
Departure angle 195
Diesel
refer to Fuel 149
Diesel fuel
Operation in winter 149
Diesel particulate filter 37
information messages 37
Digital Clock
Time 31
Dipstick 153
Display 29
Compass points 45
Coolant temperature 29
Fuel supply 30
Gear changes 39
Service interval 46
Disposal
Acceptance and recycling of used vehicles 139
Distance driven 30
Distance warning
Warning light 38
Door
Child safety lock 53
Closing 50
Emergency locking 179
Emergency locking the driver's door 178
Opening 50
Door warning 39
Drive
Driving through water 113
DriveGreen 112
driving
emissions 193
fuel consumption 193
Driving
Maximum speed 196
through water 113
driving data
operation 40

E

Economical driving
Tips 111
EDL 115
Electrical power windows
Button in the rear doors 58
Electric power windows
Operational faults 59
Electric Windows 57
Button in driver's door 57
Electronic differential lock (EDL, XDS) 115
Electronic immobilizer 100
Emergency
Changing a wheel 168
Hazard warning light system 63
Jump-starting 174
Locking the door without a locking cylinder 179
Locking the driver's door 178
Selector lever-unlocking 179
Switch off the engine by pressing a button 103
Towing the vehicle 175

Towing the vehicle using the tow hitch 177
Tyre repair 172
Unlocking the driver's door 178
Emergency equipment
Fire extinguisher 167
First aid kit 166
Jack 167
Reflective Vest 166
Vehicle tool kit 167
Warning triangle 166
Emissions 193
Engine
Running-in 111
Starting the engine 103
Warning messages 36
Engine compartment 149
Brake fluid 156
Overview 151
Vehicle battery 156
Engine number 192
engine oil
specification 153
Engine oil 152
change 152
Checking 153
Replenishing 154
Warning light 37
EPC
Warning light 34
ESC
Operation 114
Warning light 33
Exhaust inspection system
Warning light 33

F

Fastening elements 84
Fatigue detection 125
Function 125
Information messages 125
Fire extinguisher 167
First aid kit 166
Flexible storage compartment 88
Fog lights 62
Warning light 35
Fog lights with CORNER function 62
Foils 142
Fold variable loading floor
up 90
Footmats 108
see Footmats 108
Force limitation
Power windows 58
Front airbag 16
Front assistant
Warning light 38
Front Assistant 122
Disable / enable 124
Distance warning 123
Information messages 124
Operation 123
Radar sensor 122
Warning and automatic braking 123
fuel
lead-free petrol 148
Fuel 147
Diesel 149
Fuel gauge 30
refer to Fuel 147
Refuelling 147
Warning light 35
fuel consumption 193
Fuses
Assignment 181
Assignment of fuses in the dash panel 182
Changing 181
Colour coding 181
Fuse assignment in the engine compartment 183
Fuses in the engine compartment
Assignment 183

G

Gear change
Gear recommendation 39
Information on the selected gear 39
Gear changing
Gear stick 108
gears
spare 168
General view
Cockpit 26
Genuine parts 137
Glasses compartment 80
Glow plug system
Warning light 34

H

Handbrake 107
Warning light 32
Hazard warning light system 63
HBA 115
Head airbag 18
Headlight cleaning system
Headlight cleaning system 68
Headlights
Bulb arrangement 185
Driving abroad 64
Headlight cleaning system 68
Headrests 70
Adjust height 70
Headrest,
removing and installing 71
heater
Rear window 65
Heater
Recirculated air mode 96

Heating 94
Control elements 96
Exterior mirrors 69
Seats 71
HHC 116
Hill Start Assist (HHC) 116
Hitch 127
Drawback load 127
Hooks 85
Horn 26

I

Ice scrapers 142
Ignition lock 101
Immobilizer 100
Individual settings
Locking 52
Unlocking 52
Inertia reel 13
Information system 39
Compass point display 45
Door warning 39
Gear recommendation 39
MAXI DOT display 42
Multifunction display 40
operation 40
Service interval display 46
Information system operation 40
Infotainment 4
Instrument cluster 27
Auto-check control 39
Counter for distance driven 30
Display 29
Fuel gauge 30
Overview 28
Revolution counter 28
Temperature gauge 29
Warning lights 31
Interior care 144
Natural leather 145
interior light
Front 64
Interior monitor 55
ISOFIX 22

J

Jack 167
Maintenance 143
Jacking points
Raise vehicle 170
Jump-starting 174

K

KESSY
Locking 51
Unlocking 51
Key
Locking 50
Start the engine 101
Stopping the engine 101
Switch off the ignition 101
Switch on the ignition 101
Unlocking 50

L

Lamp failure
Warning light 37
Lamps
Warning light 37
Leather
Natural leather care 145
LEAVING HOME 63
Lever
Main beam 61
Turn signal 61
Levers
Windscreen wipers 67
Light
Cockpit 64
COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME 63
Fog lights with CORNER function 62
Lighting
Luggage compartment 83
Lights 59
Automatic driving lamp control 61
Daylight running 60
Fog lights 62
Hazard warning light system 63
Headlight flasher 61
Headlight range adjustment 60
Low beam 60
Main beam 61
parking lights 60
Parking lights 63
Rear fog light 62
Replacing bulbs 184
Switching on and off 60
Turn signal 61
Warning lights 31
Locking
Individual settings 52
KESSY 51
Key 50
Remote control 50
Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the inside 53
Locking the door without a locking cylinder
Emergency 179
Low beam 60
Luggage compartment 83
Cover 86
Fastening elements 84
Fixing nets 84
Flexible storage compartment 88
Lighting 83
Storage compartments under the floor 87
unlock manually 179

Unlock the boot lid 179
Variable loading floor 88
Luggage compartment cover 86
Other positions 86
Roll-up cover 87
Luggage Storage
12-volt power outlet 78
Roll-up cover 87
Storage compartments 85

M

Main beam 61
Warning light 35
Maintenance
see vehicle care 141
Manual air conditioning
Operating elements 97
Recirculated air mode 96
Manual gear changing
see Gear changing 108
MAXI DOT display 42
Main menu 42
Menu item assist systems 45
Menu item Audio 44
Menu item navigation 44
Menu item telephone 44
Operation 43
MAXI DOT see
MAXI DOT display 42
Maximum
permissible weights 192
Maximum speed 196
MCB 116
Mechanical window lifter
open and close 57
Mechanical window lifters 56
Media
AUX 82
see Infotainment 4
USB 82
Memory 42
Mirror
Exterior mirrors 69
Interior mirror 68
Make-up 66
Modifications 136
Modifications and technical alterations
Service 137
Multi-function display
operation 40
Multi collision brake (MCB) 116
Multifunction display
Functions 40
Information 40
Memory 42
Multimedia
AUX 82
USB 82
Multimedia holder 79

N

N1 88
Nameplate 192
Navigation
see Infotainment 4
Nets 84
Notes for driving with tyre repaired 174
Notes on using wheels 161

O

Oil
see Engine oil 153
Warning messages 37
Oil pressure
Warning messages 37
Onboard computer
see multifunction display 40
Operating weight 193
Operation in winter
Diesel fuel 149
Vehicle battery 158
Original accessories 137
Overspeed
Indicator light 35
Overview
Engine compartment 151
Warning lights 31

P

Parking 107
Parking assistance 116
Parking aid
Automatic system activation when moving forward 118
Function 117
Parking assistance 116
Activation / deactivation 118
Display in the Infotainment display 117
parking lights 60
Park Pilot 116
Park the vehicle
see Parking 107
Part replacement 136
Passive safety
Before every journey 8
Driving safety 8
Passive Safety 8
Payload 193
Pedals 108
Footmats 108
Petrol
see fuel 148
Phone
see Infotainment 4
Plastic parts 141
Pockets on the front seat rests 82

Polishing vehicle paint work
see vehicle care 141
Power Steering
Warning light 32
Power windows 56
Button in the front passenger door 58
Force limitation 58
Practical equipment
Net pockets on the front seat rests 82
Reflective Vest 166
Practical features
Storage pockets on the front seats 81
Waste container 78
Protective foils 142

R

Radiator fan 152
Radio
see Infotainment 4
Raise vehicle 170
Rear
interior light 65
Rear-view mirror
Exterior mirrors 69
Rear fog light 62
Warning light 33
Rear mirror 68
Rear view mirror
Interior mirror 68
Rear window - heater 65
Recirculated air mode 96
Refuelling 147
Fuel 147
Remote control
Locking 50
Replacing the battery 177
Synchronisation process 178
Unlocking 50
Remote control key
Replacing the battery 177
Removing the
bar ball, Step 1 131
bar ball, Step 2 131
Repairs and technical alterations 136
Replacing
Bulb for the fog light 189
Bulb in rear light 190
Bulbs 184
High beam bulb (halogen projection-type headlamp) 187
High beam bulb (halogen projector headlights) 188
Low beam and high beam bulb (halogen headlights) 186
parking light bulb 187
Rear window wiper blade 180
turn signal switch bulb (halogen projector headlights) 188
Vehicle battery 159
windscreen wiper blades 180
Replenishing
Coolant 155
Engine oil 154
Windscreen washer fluid 152
Reserve fuel
Warning light 35
Revolution counter 28
Rims 160
Roller blind
Luggage compartment cover 87
Roof
Load 94
Roof rack 93
mounting points 94
Roof load 94
Rubber seals 141
Running-in
Brake linings 111
Engine 111
Tyres 111

S

SAFE
see SafeLock 52
SafeLock 52
SAFELOCK
see SafeLock 52
Safety 8
Child safety 20
Child safety seats 20
Correct seated position 8
Headrests 70
ISOFIX 22
TOP TETHER 24
Save electrical energy 111
Save fuel 111
Seals
Vehicle care 141
Seat
Adjusting 70
Seat belt
height adjustment 12
Warning light 32, 36
Seat belts 11
Belt tensioners 14
fastening and unfastening 13
Seatbelts
Inertia reels 13
Seat belts
The physical principle of a frontal collision 12
Seat features 71
Seats
Armrest 72
Headrests 70
Heating 71

Rear seat 73
Seat backrests 72
Seats and headrest 70
Secure variable loading
floor 90
see Instrument cluster
see Instrument cluster 27
Selector lever
Refer to Selector lever 109
Selector lever lock
Indicator light 35
Service 137
Service interval display 46
Warning light 38
setting
Lower position of the variable loading floor 89
Setting 31
Seat belt height 12
seats and headrests 70
Upper position of the variable loading floor 89
Settings
Interior mirror 68
Setting the 31
Side airbag 17
SmartGate
Connection via the search for a Wi-Fi network 47
Setting 48
Wi-Fi direct 48
SmartLink
see Infotainment 4
Snow chains 165
Sockets
12 V 78
Spare
change 168
spare wheel
change 168
Spare wheel 163
Speed control system 118
Speed limiter 120
Indicator light 35
Operation 120
Operation description 121
Speed symbol
see Wheels 164
Spoiler 138
Stabilisation system 114
Stability Control (ESC) 114
Staring engine
Jump-starting 174
START-STOP 104
Jump-starting 174
Manually deactivating/activating the system 105
operation 104
Warning light 38
START-STOP system 104
Starter button
Problems with the engine start 104
Steering column lock locking 102
Steering column lock unlocking 102
Switching off the engine 103
Switch off the ignition 103
Switch on the ignition 103
Starting and stopping the engine at the push of the button 102
Starting and stopping the engine using the key 100
Starting engine
Jump-starting 174
Starting the engine
Starter button 103
START STOP
Information messages 105
Start the engine
Key 101
Steering column lock locking
Starter button 102
Steering column lock unlocking
Starter button 102
Steering lock locking
Key 100
Steering lock unlocking
Key 100
Steering lock (engine start push-button)
Warning light 32
Steering wheel
correct posture 9
setting 9
Stop
see Parking 107
Stopping the engine
Key 101
Storage 74
compartment beneath the front seat 81
storage compartment
Glasses compartment 80
Storage compartment
in the doors 75
in the front arm rest 79
in the front centre console 76
in the rear centre console 82
on the dash panel 76
on the front passenger side 80
on the side of the front seat 75
Storage compartments 74
Storage pockets on the front seats 81
sun visors 66
Sun visors 66
Switching lights on and off 60
Switching off the engine
Starter button 103
Switch off the ignition
Key 101
Starter button 103
Switch on the ignition
Key 101
Starter button 103

T

Tailgate 55
Taking care of your vehicle
Automatic car wash system 140
High-pressure cleaner 140
Washing by hand 140
Wash system 140
TCS
Operation 115
Warning light 33
Technical data 192
Tiptronic 110
Tools 167
TOP TETHER 24
Towing 175
Towing a trailer 134
Towing device
Accessories 132
Description 128
Operation and maintenance 144
Towing eye
Front 176
Rear 177
Towing protection 55
Traction control (TCS) 115
Trailer 132
13-pin socket 133
connect and disconnect 133
Loading 133
Safety eye 133
Towing a trailer 134
Trailer operation 127
Transmission
Warning messages 36
Transport
Luggage compartment 83
Roof rack 93
Transporting 74
Transporting children safely 20
Triangle 166
Turn signal 61
Turn signal system
Warning light 35
Tyre
Damage 163
Explanation of the label 164
see wheels 164
Tyre load-bearing capacity
see Wheels 164
Tyre pressure 161
Warning light 34
Tyre pressure monitor
refer to the tyre pressure monitoring 125
Tyre pressure monitoring 125
Display 34
Infotainment display 126
Save tyre pressure values 126
Save tyre pressure values - button 127
Save tyre pressure values - Infotainment 126
Tyre repair
General notes 173
Preparations 173
Pressure test 174
Sealing and inflating the tyre 173
Tyres 160
new 111
Tyre pressure 161
Wear and tear 162
Wear indicators 162
Tyre size 164
see wheels 164

U

Under-body
Vehicle care 144
Under-body protection 144
Unlocking
Individual settings 52
KESSY 51
Key 50
Remote control 50
Unlocking and locking 49
USB 82
Used vehicles
Acceptance and recycling 139
Useful equipment
Ashtray 77
Car park ticket holder 75
Cigarette lighter 77
Clothes hook 81
Cup holders 76
Glasses compartment 80
Multimedia holder 79
Storage compartment 74
Useful Features
12-volt power outlet 78
Using the selector lever 109

V

Variable loading floor 88
Inserting 90
Lower position 89
Removing 90
Upper position 89
Vehicle battery
Automatic load deactivation 159
Charging 158
Checking the battery electrolyte level 158
Cover 157
Disconnecting and reconnecting 159
Operation in winter 158
Replacing 159
Safety instructions 156
warning light 36
Vehicle care
Alcantara 145
Anodized parts 142
Artificial leather 145
Cavity protection 143

Chrome parts 142
Cleaning vehicle exterior 140
Cleaning wheels 143
Decorative and protective foils 142
Door locking cylinder 143
Headlight glasses 143
Interior care 144
Maintenance 141
Materials 145
Natural leather 145
Plastic parts 141
Polishing vehicle paint work 141
Rubber seals 141
Safety belt 146
Seat covers 146
Under-body protections 144
washing 139
Vehicle condition
see Auto-check control 39
Vehicle data sticker 192
Vehicle data sticker and nameplate
Vehicle data sticker and nameplate 192
Vehicle dimensions 194
Vehicle height 194
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 192
Vehicle length 194
Vehicle tool kit 167
Vehicle width 194
Vest
Placement of the reflective vest 166
VIN
Vehicle Identification Number 192
Visibility 65
Visors
see front sun visors 66

W

Warning indicator of a low temperature
Warning light 38
Warning lights 31
Warning symbols
see Warning lights 31
Warning triangle 166
warning when speeding 41
Washing
Automatic car wash system 140
by hand 140
High-pressure cleaner 140
Washing vehicles 139
Waste container 78
Weather conditions 136
Wheel bolts
Anti-theft wheel bolts 169
Caps 169
Loosening and tightening 170
wheels
spare wheel 168
Wheels
Age of wheels 161
Changing 168
Driving style 162
Full trim 168
General information 160
Load index 164
Snow chains 165
Speed symbol 164
Storage of wheels 161
Tyre damage 163
Tyre pressure 161
Tyre size 164
Tyre wear 162
Tyre wear indicator 162
Unidirectional tyres 163
Wheel balance 162
Wheels exchange 162
Winter tyres 164
Wi-Fi
Password 47
Setting 48
Wi-Fi direct 48
Window wiper
Replacing the rear window wiper blade 180
Windscreen washer fluid
Checking 152
Replenishing 152
Warning light 38
Winter 152
Windscreen washers
Windscreen washers 67
Windscreen washer system 152
Windscreen wipers
operation 67
Replacing the windscreen wipers 180
Windscreen washer fluid 152
Windscreen wipers and washers 66
Winter operation
De-icing windows 142
Snow chains 165
Winter tyres
See Wheels 164
Winter use 164
Winter tyres 164
Wiper blades 144
Service position of the windscreen wiper arms 180
Wiper interval 67
Wipers
Maintaining wiper blades 144

X

XDS 115

Reprinting, reproduction, translation, or any other use, either in whole or in part, is not permitted without the written consent of ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. expressly reserves all rights relating to copyright laws.

Subject to change.

Issued by: ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

© ŠKODA AUTO a.s. 2015

ŠKODA Service App – ŠKODA service in your pocket

The application ŠKODA service is provided for Smartphones with Android or iPhone systems. This task is mainly to help you as a customer of ŠKODA AUTO in difficult situations when on the road.

My Dealer – select your preferred dealer and read about their current offer or ŠKODA news.

Assistance – Contact a breakdown recovery service, find the nearest dealer when on the road and use the service Parking Helper.

My car – the complete operating instructions and a summary list of all the warning lights for a quick overview, a guide for media systems and Quick Tips.



Ready for download in the AppStore for iOS and Google Play for Android.

ŠKODA Manual App – get to know your vehicle

The application ŠKODA Manual is designed for tablet users with the systems Android and iOS, who have an interest in getting to know the ŠKODA vehicle brand or already have one. The application contains the complete version of the electronic manual for all current models of the ŠKODA brand. Furthermore, it contains a list of all warning lights, a guide for media systems as well as a picture diagram of the Quick Tips.

Some of the main functions of the application include:

› Easy content navigation
› Easy content reading
› Full text search through the entire manual
› Tab for quick access to favourite chapter



Available on the App Store

GET IT ON Google play

www.skoda-auto.com

Návod k obsluze
Fabia anglicky 05.2015
S58.5610.03.20
6V0012720AC

